

SOME PROBLEMS OF DIALECT LEXICOGRAPHY

with particular reference to
the preparation of a draft of an
illustrative, experientially categorised
Dictionary of South African English

Part I

A dissertation submitted to

Rhodes University

by

Jean Branford

December 1975

Acknowledgements

I wish to express my warmest thanks to those who have helped and supported me through this work.

My deepest debt is to my promoter and supervisor of studies Professor Johan Smuts to whose meticulous scholarship and never-failing, kindly guidance I owe more than can be adequately expressed here.

I want also to record my gratitude to the Human Sciences Research Council who financed the major part of the work;

To the Director and Board of the Institute for the Study of English in Africa for adopting it in its infancy as an Institute project, thereby enabling me to work on it full-time;

To Rhodes University for accepting me as a student at an advanced age, and to the Department of Afrikaans-Nederlands for receiving this English-medium cuckoo in the nest with such kindness;

To my husband and children, and to all those whose names appear, and many whose do not, in the acknowledgements preceding Part II.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
Part I	
<u>Chapter I</u> <u>Introductory</u>	
1.1 General Outline	1
1.2 Decisions	3
1.3 Selection of Items	5
1.4 Dialect Lexicography	6
1.5 South African English	8
1.6 Attitudes to South African English	11
1.7 Scope of the South African English Vocabulary	14
1.8 The Stranger and the South African English Vocabulary	17
1.9 Categorisation	19
1.10 Other Features of the Text	21
1.11 South Africanisms	22
 <u>Chapter II</u> <u>The Problems of Phonetic Representation of South African English for a Dialect Dictionary.</u>	
2.1 Introductory Note	25
2.2 The Script	25
2.3 The Non-English Sounds	28
2.3.1 The Consonants	28
2.3.2 The Vowels	30
2.3.3 Diphthongs	37
2.3.4 Vowels and Diphthongs modified by -tjie and -djie	39
2.4 Pronunciation Key	41
2.5 Pronunciation Spellings	46
2.6 References	46
 <u>Chapter III</u> <u>The Treatment of Dialect Grammar for Purposes of Lexicography</u>	
3.1 Treatment	47
3.2 Summary of Grammatical Corpus	52
3.2.1 Short Cuts and Omissions	52
3.2.2 Redundancies	58
3.2.3 Translated Structures	60
3.3 <u>The Syntactic Categories and 'Translations'</u>	73
3.3.1 Introductory Note	73
3.3.2 Translations or Transliterations	75
3.3.3 Verbs and Verbal Phrases	76
3.3.4 Adjectives, Noun Modifiers and Group Modifiers	78
3.3.5 Other	79
 <u>Chapter IV</u> <u>The Treatment of Dialect Vocabulary</u>	
4.1 Introduction; the taxonomic approach; problems of inclusion	81
4.2 The Detailed Categorisation of the Vocabulary.	90
Introductory Note	91
'Ready Reference Table' of Categories	93
Index	94-98
Categories 1 - 34, Notes and Word Lists	99-187

4.3	<u>Labelling for a Dialect Dictionary</u>	188
	4.3.1 Abbreviations and labelling	195
	I Linguistic Signals	195
	II Usage Signals	196
	III Other English Dialects and Other Languages	199
	Alphabetical List of Abbreviations and Other Labels	201
4.4	<u>The Treatment of Place Name Formatives for a Dialect Dictionary</u>	205
4.5	<u>Cross-dialect References in the Text</u>	215

References:

	Bibliography; Introductory Note	225
	Detailed Bibliography :	
I	Dictionaries	229
II	Other Reference Works	232
	Addenda to II	238
III	Newspapers and Magazines	240
IV	Word Sources	241
V	Other	257

Part II

A draft of a dictionary of South African English showing forms, features, adaptations and borrowings characteristic of English in South Africa: with illustrative quotations and a categorised survey of the vocabulary. ¹

Acknowledgements

Introduction	i - x
[Categorised Survey of the Vocabulary] ¹	
Pronunciation Key ²	xi - xv
Alphabetical List of Abbreviations and Other Labels ³	xvi - xix
Abbreviations and Labelling ³	xx - xxv
The Lexicon A - Z	1-580
Addenda	581-590
[Bibliography] ⁴	

1. The Categorised Survey is not repeated here but is given in Part I as Chapter IV 4.2 pp. 90-187
2. This also appears in Chapter II, 2.4 p41
3. These appear in Chapter IV 4.3.1 pp195-204
4. This is not repeated in Part II, but appears at the end of Part I p229

It is to be regretted that in Volumes II and III it has been necessary to insert a large number of handwritten addenda. This has been primarily occasioned by the fact that the full, amended typescript prepared for the publisher only came to hand after the two volumes of Part II were already bound. It has seemed preferable, nevertheless, not to sacrifice this material, once it again became available, to the outward appearance of the work.

Certain other handwritten addenda, it will be seen, have appeared very recently in magazines or newspapers and have been included, usually where illustrative quotations were lacking or inadequate, for the sake of completeness.

The Latin names of the birds and creatures listed in Chapter IV, 4.2, according to the newest available taxonomy, which supersede those given in the text, are written beside the relevant entries, even if there has been no change in the nomenclature.

It is hoped that these expansions and alterations will not be an inconvenience to the reader.

JB.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTORY

1.1. General Outline

This dissertation consists in essence of an experiment and a commentary upon it. The text which constitutes Part II is a lexicographical experiment incorporating some features and treatments not usual in lexicography, and Part I consists of a discussion of the problems encountered, principles applied and procedures followed. Neither the matter nor the manner of the experiment, however, lends itself in the present state of our knowledge to the fully impersonal objectivity that is often claimed for the experiments in the physical sciences. At the same time every effort has been made to establish an unbiased record of the data and to maintain a certain methodological consistency.

The main experimental feature of Part II is that it is an attempt to combine an orthodox, alphabetical dictionary with an experiential categorisation of the vocabulary, without repeating the entire data for each type of treatment. This has been done by means of a series of numbered, classified word-lists with a limited subject index as a guide to their use. The entries themselves, instead of being repeated in the order of their classification, are numbered according to the category or categories to which the word defined belongs. It can then, by means of its number(s), be found in its own lexical or experiential set (or sets) in the categorised section. This part of the work might be better described as lexicology¹ rather than lexicography but does, I think, prove itself to be a useful adjunct to the A - Z lexicon proper.

Apart from the detailed categorisation system the text contains three features not normally included in dictionaries of small compass: illustrative quotations, etymologies and a

1. Ladislav Zgusta in his paper in Lexicography in English (see McDavid and Duckert) p. 14, stresses the differences and the similarity between the two: 'Both lexicology and lexicography study the lexicon, but whereas lexicology concentrates more on general properties and features that can be viewed as systematic, lexicography typically has the so to say individuality of each lexical unit in the focus of its interest. The notion of lexical unit plays a central role in both these branches of linguistics.'

number of tentative parallels between South African and other varieties of English by means of cross-references to items of similar or related meaning or form in the English of Australia, Canada, the U. S. A., Hong Kong, Anglo-India and other 'overseas' English speech communities. Thus vaaljapie parallels Australian red-ned (bulk claret); mafufunana, Canadian piblokto (madness among Eskimo women); randlord, Hong Kong tai-pan or Anglo-Indian nabob.

An attempt has also been made to update the system of grammatical designations, and the labelling generally, on principles closer to those of recent linguistic thinking than those of commercially-produced dictionaries tend to be.

The fact that the text is a dictionary of a dialect, as opposed to the total language, has given rise to many of the 'problems' of the title of the dissertation. The first of these is that the dialect element is only part of the total linguistic repertoire of the dialect speaker. From another point of view a 'dialect' may constitute a complete linguistic system in itself, but the primary problem arises from the fact that most of the major 'overseas' manifestations of English have a great deal in common. If it were not so, another entire language would be in question in each case and they would cease to be dialects.

The following definition of dialect from Webster's Seventh New Collegiate Dictionary has been adopted for this work as an initial concept from which to approach South African English: 'A regional variety of language distinguished by features of vocabulary, grammar and pronunciation from other regional varieties and constituting together with them a single language'.¹

This states the all-important fact which is true of a language as well as of a dialect, that its organisation is threefold, comprising sounds, grammar and vocabulary: 'matching' one might say, the basic linguistic studies Phonology, Syntax and Lexicology.

The dialect lexicographer's initial problem is that he must decide what the dialect element consists of, and then how much or how little merits inclusion. He must decide too, what in the dialect he is describing is 'non-standard' in terms of the internationally intelligible

1. I. V. Arnold (The English Word, 1966) writing of Australian, Canadian and Indian English states 'Each of these has developed a literature of its own, and is characterised by peculiarities in phonetics, spelling, grammar and vocabulary'. Chapter XIII, p. 245.

norm.¹ Since the material is non-standard, it is likely that the standard lexicographical treatment of items will need to be modified in various ways, particularly in the case of the grammatical material and of the numerous loan-words current in daily use among South Africans. The inevitable concomitant of a large body of loan-words is a lexicographical treatment which becomes a hybrid between the bilingual and the explanatory.

Other substantial problems have been those of evolving a phonetic notation to fit a large number of non-English 'borrowed' sounds; of devising labelling to cover usages and 'status' of varying kinds, and perhaps most difficult of all, finding for the intractable material of dialect grammar a reasonably succinct treatment for lexicographical purposes.

1.2. Decisions

All lexicography must involve decision-making and choice: dialect lexicography is not unique in this. Even at the level of the minutiae of definition some aspects of meaning are shown and others omitted '... Men rarely consider the whole meaning of a word. No lexical definition can reflect the whole impression the defined word makes on the mind'.²

The history of English lexicography reflects of course a general movement from a prescriptive to an ostensibly descriptive approach. Dr Johnson's Preface to An English Dictionary (1755) admits that '... no dictionary of a living tongue can ever be perfect, since while it is hastening to publication, some words are budding and some falling away ...' 'Those who have been persuaded to think well of my design require it should fix our language, and put a stop to those alterations which time and chance have hitherto been suffered to make in it without opposition. With this consequence I will confess I flattered myself for a while, but I now begin to fear that I have indulged expectations which neither reason nor experience can justify.' He adds that the lexicographer should be derided who 'shall imagine that his dictionary can embalm his language and secure it from corruption and decay ...' - confessions that stand in a somewhat

1. Ladislav Zgusta comments on this in his Manual of Lexicography (1971): 'The dialect dictionaries can be worked out in two different ways: either the dictionary offers complete information on the lexicon of the respective dialect or local form of language without reference to any other dialects or forms; or the dictionary lists and explains only what is different from another dialect or, usually, from what is considered the standard national form', p. 205.

2. Antoine Arnauld: La Logique ou L'Art de Penser (1662) translated by J. Bickell and B. James as The Art of Thinking, Bobbs-Merrill 1964, Part I, Ch. 14, p. 89).

ironic contrast to the legislative tone of his earlier proposals in The Plan of a Dictionary of the English Language (1747): 'The chief intent of it is to preserve the purity and ascertain the meaning of our English idiom': with the further claim that 'By tracing every word to its original, and not admitting, but with great caution, any of which no original can be found, we shall secure our language from being over-run with cant, from being crouded with low terms, the spawn of folly or affectation, which arise from no just principles of speech ...'.

Sir James Murray's Preface to the first volume of A New English Dictionary (1888) claims an objective coverage of his basic data in the following often quoted passage: 'The aim of this dictionary is to present in alphabetical series the words which have formed the English vocabulary from the time of the earliest records down to the present day, with all the relevant facts concerning their form, sense-history, pronunciation, and etymology. It embraces not only the standard language of literature and conversation, whether current at the moment or obsolete, or archaic, but also the main technical vocabulary, and a large measure of dialectal usage and slang.'

This, Albert H. Marckwardt has pointed out, 'contains not one word about fixing the language, about proscription or prescription of any kind. Operating on this basis, the lexicographer contents himself with setting down the record, leaving its interpretation to the reader.'¹

It is interesting to note that Murray, below his diagram in the first page of what he calls General Explanations, remarks tangentially on loan-words, a major concern to the dialect lexicographer: 'To every man the domain of "common words" widens out in the direction of his own reading, research, business, provincial or foreign residence, and contracts in the direction with which he has no practical connexion: no one man's English is all English'.

Many years later the editors of Webster's Third International Dictionary (1961) attempted to carry the tradition of objectivity even further in their celebrated treatment of such sensitive, controversial items as ain't which sparked off a major controversy reflected by Sledd and Ebbitt.²

1. Dictionaries and the English Language in Introductory Readings on Language, p. 136 (see Anderson and Stageberg, 1966).

2. James Sledd and Wilma Ebbitt: Dictionaries and THAT Dictionary, Scott Foresman (1962).

1.3 Selection of Items

The much publicised objectivity of this and other modern dictionaries obscures, however, the lexicographer's basic problem of which items to include and which to omit, though this is admirably represented in Sir James Murray's famous diagram ¹ of the common words of English in relation to its specialised vocabularies in the Preface to Volume I of A New English Dictionary, and in his comment that 'practical utility has some bounds and a Dictionary has definite limits: the lexicographer must, 'draw the line somewhere' in each diverging direction'.

In the first place it is impossible for even the largest of dictionaries to cover the entire vocabulary. The first edition of the great Oxford New English Dictionary is reputed to contain about 450,000 headwords. Yet the South African Army Language Bureau has, according to Brigadier J.H. Picard ², over half a million items of military terminology on file. While this figure may include items from a number of different languages, it does indicate the remarkable proliferation of technical and specialised vocabularies in the modern world, and the impossibility of reflecting all these vocabularies in a single English-language dictionary of manageable size.

Small-scale dictionaries must, accordingly, be even more drastically selective. Barnhart ³ explains that consideration of price and format tend to limit the ordinary 'desk' dictionary to a total number of headwords of the order of 120,000 or 150,000; a substantial drop from the figure of 450,000 in the original Oxford English Dictionary ⁴.

For the dialect lexicographer the problem of selection is still more acute. He covers, as is suggested above, only a sector of the vocabulary, that sector characteristic of the dialect which is his chosen field. His first problem in this regard is that of the overlap between every major dialect of English and what may be described as the 'common core' of the language, that is, the definition of an 'Americanism', a 'South Africanism' or as the case may be.

This problem is considerably extended when the dialect under study happens to constitute one of the languages of a multilingual society, as

1. L. C. Eksteen in his paper Die Leksikologie van Afrikaans (Taal-fasette 9, 1969) also draws the distinction verbally and diagrammatically between the core or kernwoordeskat and the peripheral or randwoordeskat with the extended or uitgebreide kernwoordeskat occupying the territory between them.

2. Personal communication.

3. Clarence L. Barnhart Problems in Editing Commercial Monolingual Dictionaries No. 55 in Readings in Applied English Linguistics, edit. Harold B. Allen, p. 458.

4. A New English Dictionary on Historical Principles, 1888 - 1928.

in the case of South African English. Most South Africans know, or are acquainted with, more languages than one. Prima facie, any speaker of two languages can borrow any item of his L2 into his L1. In practice he probably borrows only selectively, say lexical rather than structural items, and among lexical items those for which the resources of his L1 are in one way or another insufficient. But even when this constraint is taken into account, the dialect lexicographer in a multilingual situation is confronted with enormous arrays of loan-words or potential loan-words, receding in the case of South African English into the total vocabularies of Afrikaans, Xhosa, Zulu and the other languages of the Republic.¹

A further complication is that for a given L1 in a multilingual society, different individuals and groups will make different sets of borrowings from the second or other languages available to them, and many of these borrowings will feature in texts and/or records available to the lexicographer.

In this situation, short of a comparative computer-analysis of impossibly large bodies of material, there is at present no substitute for personal judgements of what are the 'established' items of South African English like braai and stoep rather than nonce-words such as waspop or wikkeldoedie (go-go dancer). Personal judgements, however, may be merely capricious, or to a certain extent data-based. For this text I have had access to the files of the Dictionary of South African English on Historical Principles, which contain much of my own reading, and this, supplemented by other numerous personally recorded items, particularly in the case of the corpus of dialect grammar material, and other reading, does, I hope, provide a reasonably solid basis of data.

A further problem is that whereas orthodox lexicography relies largely upon written (and usually printed) texts, the dialect lexicographer, because much of his material never gets into print, has to rely much more heavily upon personal observations of the spoken language.

1.4 Dialect Lexicography

The dialect lexicographer, dealing as he does with non-standard and often contentious material, treads scholastically and socially dangerous paths: not for him the role of Dr Johnson's lexicographer

1. W.R.G. Branford, Dictionary of South African English on Historical Principles. Report No. 1, 1970.

'a harmless drudge, a maker of dictionaries.' He occupies what James Sledd has used as a title to one of his works The Lexicographer's Uneasy Chair.¹ Drudgery is certainly to a certain extent his portion, but much of this is the very real mental exertion of decision. He must decide and constantly decide what, for him, are the manifestations of the dialect which he treats, and take the responsibility for these decisions. Even Dr Johnson remarked in his Plan of a Dictionary (1747) that 'It was not easy to determine by what rule of distinction the words of this dictionary were to be chosen.' The dialect lexicographer runs at all times the risk of having levelled at him, as I have already had, the accusation that he is 'giving currency' to undesirable material by including it in a dictionary. This is of course nonsense: nevertheless, it is not at present easy to convince the average educated person that a dictionary does not and should not prescribe or lay down absolutes but rather that it describes the language observed in use: that it represents 'not the truth of things but the truth of usage',² and that for the lexicographer the definition of a word is not an arbitrary artefact of his own opinions or imaginings, but a summary of its uses. As Wittgenstein later put it 'For a large class of cases the meaning of a word is its use in the language.'³

A further problem which faces him is the all too prevalent notion that 'dialect' is a nasty word signifying material in questionable taste, typified by stage or cartoon presentations of bucolic characters leaning on fences saying 'Arr, but he do be 'un of the gurt varmers', or similar ridiculous representations of non-standard speech.

That this notion is not only current among the uninformed was brought home to me when I described this work as dialect lexicography⁴ to the editor of the Oxford English Dictionary who appeared shocked by such a formulation and said 'Well, I suppose I must revise my idea of dialect.' Harold B. Allen remarks in Part II of Lexicography in English⁵ 'Until quite recently dictionary-makers were not receptive to the idea that words may be good words even though they

1. James Sledd, 1962.

2. Antoine Arnauld trans. La Logique ou L'Art de Penser, Chapter XIV, p. 89.

3. Ludwig Wittgenstein Philosophical Investigations, 1953 cit. Barbara M.A. Strang Modern English Structure, 1962.

4. I note that Edward Gates in A Bibliography on General and English Lexicography Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences Vol. 211, June 8 1973 (see McDavid and Duckert) lists Allsopp, Richard 1970 A Critical Commentary on the Dictionary of Jamaican English and appends to it the description '(On the scope of a dialect dictionary)'.

5. Part II Dialectology and the Dictionary (see McDavid and Duckert, 1973) p. 50.

have currency in a limited region. The history of attitudes towards usage reveals that for many centuries regionalisms have been derided by people writing about their language', and further that 'Even the scholarly acceptance of the legitimacy of dialect studies in the last third of the 19th century did not affect the general notion that dialectalisms are substandard if not plainly incorrect.'

For purposes of this text, dialect is taken basically to mean that form of the language current in a particular speech community, whatever its size, and in this case as I shall later hope to show, a remarkably non-homogenous one.

1.5 South African English

In attempting to define South African English, as I have interpreted this term for the preparation of the draft dictionary which constitutes Part II, I have taken as a basis not the purists' view that South African English is the English of White English-speaking South Africans, but the broader and to me more realistic description given by N.G. Sabbagha¹: 'South African English is a regional dialect, that is a variety of speech used by a particular community in a specific area. It is the variety of English which is spoken in South Africa and which has acquired its distinctive characteristics partly through the contact of other languages spoken in South Africa. Of these by far the most influential has been Afrikaans (formerly known as Cape Dutch) ... What should not be overlooked is that the interaction of languages in South Africa is multilingual rather than bilingual. English is used as a second language not only by most Afrikaans-speaking South Africans, but also by a large number of non-whites (Coloureds, Bantu and Indians). These speakers, in their use of English, are inevitably influenced by the sound system and the structure of whatever language happens to be their mother tongue ...' Sabbagha adds: 'an investigation into the varieties² of South African English should prove to be valuable.'

This account does, I think, justify my view that 'South African English' is not the dialect of a single restricted group but the lingua franca for many groups among whom, or many of whom, there is no

1. Standard Encyclopaedia of Southern Africa Vol. IV English, South African, N.G. Sabbagha, pp. 323-328.

2. There has been no room within the compass of a lexicographical-lexicological study to explore varieties of pronunciation. An extensive exploration of Indian English speech has been made by Dr Devamonie Bhugwan. Thesis title: An Investigation into the Use of English by Indians in South Africa with special reference to Natal. UNISA 1970.

other means of communication. In fact, as Sabbagha states there are varieties¹ of South African English. It is to these varieties that I have tried in a small way to do justice. The strongest influence, as Sabbagha and others have pointed out, has been that of speakers of Afrikaans as mother-tongue. This appears both in aspects of grammar carried over into English, and of course in many loan-words which might by now be said to be almost equally the property of South Africans whose mother-tongue is English.

From the black African world and what I have called 'Oriental South Africa' there are selections of items, some, naturally, better known than others.

The argument can be, and has been, raised that so broad an interpretation of the speech community includes many speakers and writers to whom English is not the mother tongue. This is, of course, true. I think, however, that one can validly argue that the lingua franca situation in a multilingual country does transcend that of whether the language is the speakers' L1 or L2. It is for this reason that I have included in the title of the dictionary a fairly comprehensive subtitle: 'The forms, features, adaptations and borrowings characteristic of English in South Africa,' to cover myself against the criticisms of the purists under whose fire I have constantly been since the outset of this work.

Treating the varieties or group vocabularies of South African English under, as it were, a single heading might give the impression that the material in the text could or would be found in the speech of any single South African. Clearly this is not the case. Many, or most, of the more specialized group vocabulary items are likely to be unknown to most other speakers unless they have made particular contact with or study of the relevant group, as is the case with anthropologists, Orientalists and experts in Malay studies or in African languages. This point is explained in what is designed to be the general introduction to the published text at the beginning of Part II, and in the notes preceding Categories 2 African World and 25 Oriental South Africa in Chapter IV, 4.2.

1. Dr Bughwan cites Professor L.W. Lanham as listing English as a means of communication among Indians as one of the five 'dialects' of English in South Africa. [An Investigation into the Use of English by Indians in South Africa with special reference to Natal, UNISA 1970.]

The extensive inclusion of loan words - the 'borrowings' of the subtitle - is not peculiar to this work or to South African English. I. V. Arnold¹, writing in Leningrad in 1966 upon Canadian, United States, Australian and Indian English, says 'The vocabulary of all the variants is characterised by a high percentage of borrowings from the language of the people who inhabited the land before the English colonizers came. Many of them denote some specific realia of the new country: local animals, plants or weather conditions, new social relations, new trades and conditions of labour. The local words penetrate into the English language and later on may become international, if they are of sufficient interest and importance ...' A. C. Partridge² writing on the history of English in South Africa makes a very similar comment: 'The growth of English within a new colony's concerns is largely lexicographical. Almost all the vocabulary added to the English tongue at the Cape was the work of the name-givers - naturalists, anthropologists, ethnographers, map makers and travellers with other human interests.'

The Australian and New Zealand Supplement to the Pocket Oxford Dictionary³ contains among its nearly 1700 items 234 (14% of the whole) from the aboriginal and Maori languages [compared with about 200 from the African languages in well over 3000 items]⁴. This is an interesting contrast with South African English for which, as Sabbagha says 'of these [other languages] by far the most influential has been Afrikaans.' Loan words in the text of Part II from other languages are relatively few and far between the 'Afrikanerisms' which have been described as follows by W. S. Mackie⁵: 'By Afrikanerisms we mean Afrikaans words and idioms that have been taken over into South African English, that is, into the regional dialect of English that is spoken in South Africa by English South Africans. ... In a bilingual country it is natural that the two languages, in this case Afrikaans and English, should influence each other. In dealing with the influence of Afrikaans on English, however, there is an initial difficulty. There are a good many varieties⁶ of South African English differentiated partly by region and to a greater extent by social class. ...' Further, he says, 'It is unlikely that any English South African would call a boomslang a tree snake,

1. I. V. Arnold The English Word, Moscow 1966, 1973 edit.

2. A. C. Partridge Standard Encyclopaedia of Southern Africa, English in South Africa, History of, Vol. IV, p. 334.

3. Prepared by R. W. Burchfield.

4. See Introduction to Part II, and Part I Chapter 4.2.

5. W. S. Mackie Standard Encyclopaedia of Southern Africa, Vol. I Afrikanerisms, pp188 - 191.

6. These varieties are within the group of 'English South Africans' cited above, and cannot be equated with those described by Sabbagha.

or use maize instead of mealie, or fir cone instead of dennebol....' and adds that 'as ... the English language has long had the habit of being hospitable to words from other languages, it is probable that the adoption of Afrikaans words into South African English will increase in the future.'

Few people with an ear for language would, I think, dispute the prophetic nature of the last remark, especially listening to the speech of children. It is noticeable that numerous Afrikaans words are used by them with such naturalness that it is hard to believe that some even register that the words are not English. The following samples of the regular usage of a seventeen year old schoolgirl of very average 'school style' ability in Afrikaans (in fact a non-speaking knowledge of the language) contains items not included in the dictionary as yet.¹

I'm getting hardegat now - I'm not going to let them hurt my feelings any more.

I've got on my coat and jersey - don't treat me like a bloody waspop.

You should have seen how she carried on at the dance - I always heard she was a proper warm patat (sexy piece).

It is interesting to note that while there are quite adequate English slang items for two of them, 'hard-arsed'^{*} and 'hot number', the Afrikaans terms are used from choice.

The regular adoption of loan words, especially by the young, I can see as being in no way reprehensible; unless of course too many colloquialisms creep into their written language or into the spoken language on formal occasions. For such contexts, both English colloquialisms or borrowed ones may be equally undesirable, and if loan-words are used in the company of foreigners who do not understand them, this is simply bad manners.

1.6 Attitudes to South African English.

Dire warnings of 'Anglikaans' and other unrealistic Canute-like behaviour will not stem this particular tide and I see no alternative to an adjustment of the wholesale condemnatory attitude towards South African English by teachers, and the ambivalent one of so many South African English speakers. A.C. Partridge² remarks 'The English-speaking population is not, in fact, language-proud and is touchy only

1. I notice also the unattractive terms drol and poep(hol), as modes of address or reference, in regular currency among school-boys in preference to English slang terms.

2. A.C. Partridge Standard Encyclopaedia of Southern Africa, English in South Africa, History of, Vol. IV, p. 334.

in its uncritical reverence for received English pronunciation.¹ This, I think, is a somewhat dated view and reflects the struggle, long ago lost for a 'pure English accent'. L. W. Lanham some years ago postulated a Standard or 'received' South African English pronunciation, some of which goes further than I personally can accept - (the diphthong of where for example is rendered by him as a pure vowel - [eh]).² Deplorable as some of this seems, it is, nevertheless, a more realistic appraisal of the question of accent than that of Partridge or of Hopwood³.

I. V. Arnold,⁴ writing for Russian students of English, says 'Those who think that the Americans must look to the British for a standard are wrong, and vice versa it is not for the American to pretend that English in Great Britain is inferior to the English he speaks. At present there is no single "correct" English and the American, Canadian and Australian English have developed standards of their own.' It is noteworthy that he continues '... the aim of this book was to describe mainly the vocabulary of British English, as it is the British variant that is received and studied in Soviet Schools.'

The efforts of some South African teachers to stamp out borrowed dialect words from their pupils' speech and writing, and the attitude of many educationists towards the 'fight for pure English' induce at times a certain shamefacedness among South African English speakers, resulting in such absurdities as borrowing a loan word like barbecue to avoid saying braai, or the architect's adoption of the genteelism terrace for stoep.

The research worker preparing a dictionary of South African English encounters very often a certain hostility, especially from teachers, towards the project - primarily, as previously mentioned, the criticism, that it is only going to be a slang dictionary at best, and full of terms better forgotten than perpetuated by being given the status of appearing in a dictionary. What most South Africans do not know is that there have

2. L. W. Lanham, and A. Traill Pronounce English Correctly, 1965

3. D. Hopwood South African English Pronunciation 1928

4. I. V. Arnold The English Word, Moscow 1966 1973 edit.

been extensive explorations of the dialects of other English speech communities and that South African English is one of the last to receive detailed modern treatment.

The attempt to stamp out dialect usage from the speech of South Africans and reduce the result to the travesty of Standard British English mentioned by Partridge - since in very few cases can the accent be obliterated - is one that can only fail.

The teacher who feels strongly that South African English is a bad thing would do better to concentrate on teaching his pupils to write a clear and reasonably simple form of the standard literary norm, without excluding borrowed items for which there are no valid substitutes. A simplistic policy of exclusion can only lead to circumlocution and self-consciousness.

To inculcate, however, an ability to recognise and avoid sub-standard dialect grammar such as 'she was busy lying in bed', 'a person doesn't know what to do with yourself on honeymoon' or 'he's taller than what I am' is likely to be of greater value than to try to make a child believe that it is deeply and dreadfully wrong to write 'I saw a gogga under the rusbank', or to force him to believe that some substitute must be found for a span of oxen which must of course be 'yoked' and 'unyoked' instead of inspanned and outspanned. Correctness in grammatical usage in speech or writing is, I feel sure, of greater long-term value than a censorship of vocabulary.

Obviously a child must learn that the informal register of speech cannot be carried over lock stock and barrel into his writing, but this has surely more to do with appropriateness to situation, which should automatically exclude certain usages, than with overlooking the existence or banning the use of a large sector of his everyday vocabulary.

The child who describes his new teacher as a 'lekker ou' is unlikely even to be aware that the words he is using are not English ones, whereas being required to refer to him as a 'good fellow' or a 'jolly decent chap' would very probably give him the feeling of speaking a language not his own.

So deeply is much of our vocabulary entrenched in our usage that I feel outside pressures to stamp it out could even be dangerous in the case of a child, as too much interference with his speaking of his mother tongue might have the effect of turning what is his most deeply familiar and taken-for-granted possession into something strange and inimical,

to be re-mastered in a new and alien way.

The written language of the child is a different matter, and grammatical conformity and avoidance of over-colloquial terminology is something which can with advantage be taught and learned.

What then of the adult? Many, if not most, South Africans use and probably enjoy their colourful and explicit vocabulary to the full, unless of course they have been brainwashed or made ashamed of it in childhood. Obviously those parts or aspects of the vocabulary used vary from individual to individual depending on his character, age, occupation and interests, and from context to context according to the degree of formality which the situation requires

1.7 Scope of the South African English Vocabulary

Certain groups of words are more likely to be in general use than others. For example, few South Africans, even school teachers, would be likely to avoid - or condemn - the terms of the vocabulary of the landscape and topography. Veld, vlei, drift, donga, koppie, krans, and their fellows are so well established as to be unassailable, many of them having world-wide recognition. Even the 'pure English' fetishist would scarcely expect 'glen' for kloof, or 'savannah' or some such substitute for veld. It is conceivable, however, that he might prefer to dignify vlei with 'lake' and krans with 'cliff' even at the expense of accuracy or explicitness. The names of foods, fruits, vegetables, dishes, edible fish, some drinks, certain garments, and numerous articles of household furniture and equipment, though not generally known beyond our shores, are more or less indispensable to South African speakers. One needs only to translate 'stinkwood rusbank with riempie back and seat' - 'Open-style settle of indigenous timber Octaea bullata with back and seat of leather thongs woven in open basket work pattern' to see how far the avoidance of three common items of the South African English vocabulary takes one into verbiage. This is obviously an extreme case, but the verkrampte purist asking for 'tangerines' instead of nartjies, or 'muscat grapes' instead of hanepoots would almost certainly find himself in difficulties.

A large category of many words and wide application is that of the everyday, and less everyday, vocabulary of farming in this country, (about 430 of the 3000 odd items in the text of Part II). It is interesting to note that farming terminology, mainly sheep farming, takes up 156 items, 9.17% of the nearly seventeen hundred listed in the Supplement of Australian and New Zealand English to the Pocket Oxford Dictionary of 1969. The 'sectional' language, or some of it, of farmers in this country may well be mystifying to many townspeople and therefore not as generally familiar

as those terms concerning the landscape and domestic articles.

Most aspects of the vocabulary have varying applicability according to the interests of the speaker concerned.¹ A keen fisherman will be familiar with a set of names which are completely strange to most people, and the naturalist, be he botanist, zoölogist or ornithologist, will know a multitude of terms unknown to most men in the street. These specialist vocabularies are very sparingly treated for purposes of this text for reasons discussed elsewhere (Chapter IV., 4.1.). The historian also, will be au fait with many terms unknown to most, as will be the anthropologist, the lawyer or the man on the mines. Nevertheless, limited or not in their application, these vocabularies, at least the less esoteric parts of them, must be treated as explicitly and usefully as possible by the lexicographer of South African English.

It is difficult to dismiss vocabularies covering such fields as these as the 'slang' which is all too often applied as a blanket term to South African English as a whole.

South African English is no different from any English dialect in being full of colloquialisms. No spoken language short of the most formal in both context and content can be otherwise, since by definition and etymology colloquialisms are those usages which occur in speech. The colloquialisms of Australian and New Zealand English² are 10.6% of the items (181), and specialist dictionaries such as those of Captain Francis Grose or Eric Partridge,³ or even the earlier Dictionary of the Canting Crew of B. E. Gent⁴ show by their size and the numerousness of their items that there has never been any shortage of terms of this kind. Actual 'bad' words and expressions which are, of course, legion in such works, are relatively few in South African English. The treatment of these is discussed in Chapter IV., 4.1 and 4.3.

1. A point made by Sir James Murray in his General Explanations in the introduction to a New English Dictionary 1888 and quoted on p. 4.

2. Supplement to the Pocket Oxford Dictionary 1969 R. W. Burchfield.

3. See Reference : Bibliography Section 1.

4. See Reference: Bibliography Section 1.

Ordinary, harmless if mildly vulgar colloquial terms are extremely numerous in South African English. These for the most part are collected into two groups for this text, one being Expressions, Idioms and Slang (Category 10, see Chapter IV 4.2) and the other Exclamations and Interjections (Category 9, see IV 4.2). These groups or categories, particularly the first, contain widely diversified terms¹.

An inescapable part of the life and language of South Africa is politics with its attendant terminology, some of which has spread across the world: apartheid has been used to describe the evils of the caste system in India, and verkramp used of the Irish by The Times. This vocabulary is very thoroughly established largely through the press, primarily via parliamentary reports and news items, though political columnists like Hogarth de Hoogh of the Johannesburg Sunday Times have done much to consolidate the position of new, tentatively-adopted political terminology by repeated use. The acceptance of political terms has not, I think, been a matter for controversy. Since 1948 when an Afrikaans-speaking government took over, the names of their policies and institutions have been adopted into the national vocabulary as a matter of course. Certain terms which have a brief, ad hoc, topical life, such as broedertwis which was revived at the time of the split in the Nationalist Party, and others, although they may appear, as concepts, promising material for the vocabulary, simply fall away as the need or occasion for them recedes into political history or obscurity.

More controversial is the question of designation of people, whether it be the possible choices among Kaffir, native, Bantu and African or the question of modes of address, like the government attempt to introduce Mnumzana (Mna.) to avoid addressing or referring to an African as Mr. All terminology of this kind is tricky ground for the South African, and a field in which it is necessary to tread delicately, as reports in the press have shown on the use of boy and kaffir. It is perhaps in changing modes of address that the winds of changing opinion and attitudes can be first felt, as for example when one newspaper after another adopted Mr for referring to blacks.

Others never change: Uncle and Auntie for older friends, especially in the country districts, live side by side with Oom and Tannie, and Oupa and Ouma can be heard even in 'very English' families.

More changeable in comparison with these are the modes of referring to people of other kinds, classes or races, which often seem to have bursts of fashionable use. Items like hairy(back), rock(spider), krev, rope,

1. These items are listed in Chapter IV, 4.2 Categories 9 and 10.

crunchie, gom, gops, munt, choc, goffel, geelbek, all of them somewhat unattractive colloquial terms, seem to have fluctuating life and popularity.

It can, I think, be seen from these examples of words and word-groups, that the vocabulary of South African English has its place in almost all aspects of life and experience, and that to the South African speaker it should not be a matter for shame or self-deprecation, but part of his heritage for better or for worse.

1.8 The Stranger and the South African English Vocabulary

The problems of the stranger to South Africa, be he settler, traveller or one who has come from another, less settled part of this continent, are very different from those of the South African, and likely to be less coloured by prejudiced attitudes.

One of the aims of the text must naturally be to elucidate for the stranger unfamiliar terms which he may encounter in our country, in the press, in shops, in daily conversation, traffic signs, strange and unfamiliar sounding place names and even cryptic menus.

Perusal even of a single sale page of a 'big city' newspaper printed say in Port Elizabeth, may bring him face to face with advertisements offering: Boergoat kapaters, unwissel to two-tooth hamels, Africander type tollies, Dorpers, Dormers, Inkona cattle, a five-gaited Boerperd and other unfamiliar creatures, and, what is more, a weird-sounding 'No Objection Permit' may be required to be produced at the sale. A household auction advertisement may offer a very old stinkwood rusbank, yellowwood and blackwood riempie chairs, several bankies, a country koskas, a jonkmanskas, a yellowwood wakis, possibly even a bakkis and an up-to-the minute bedroom suite in kiaat. Should the newcomer be interested in property, he may encounter a beautiful stand at some seaside resort, a zinc-roofed dwelling in some back block or even a Cape Dutch style mansion in the best part of town. Farm advertisements may produce a bewildering variety of strange terms: well-camped, irrigation farm, 'improvements include a homestead', dry lands, land camps, grazing camps, good mixed veld, rooigras, oulandsgras, fat-lamb production, 'well watered by fountains and several boreholes', vlei/veld, vlakteveld, sheep and cattle kraals, good hunting and an excellent proposition for game ranching. Furthermore, the place which is offered for sale may have a quite extraordinary name, Nooitgedacht, Welverdiend, Morgenster, Mooi-Uitsig Schoonberg, Twist-Niet, completely unpronounceable and meaningless to most non-South Africans, and equally strange names will face him wherever he goes.

The same paper may tell him that a new dominee has been appointed in Heilbrøn; a driver had a lucky escape when his car was submerged in a swollen spruit near De Doorns; the body of an unidentified Coloured man was found in a donga last night;¹ the platteland farmers are complaining that swarthaak is destroying the veld in certain areas; battle sticks, pangas and assegais were used in a faction fight between two impis of tribesmen at a kraal in the Kranskop district of Natal; jukskei teams will be competing at the week-end and the match will be followed by volkspele and a braaivleis at Brakkuil, though the mealie season has been disappointing. Elsewhere he may read that Bantu homeland leaders are meeting to discuss the implications of separate development; that a party leader slams petty apartheid; the verligtes have been criticised by the verkramptes; the Administrator of the Cape will be unveiling a plaque; the Herstigtes will be fighting the next election; a predikant from Rietfontein writing in the Kerkbode is condemning mini-skirts; somebody has left on an exit permit; there has been a conviction under the Immorality Act; Mr 'Boet' X has had a new pacemaker inserted; a student has been arrested for being in possession of zols containing a mixture of tobacco, dagga and malpitte; Tant Maria Yhas made a rousing speech about the re-naming of Despatch, and an indignant letter to the editor pointing out that apartheid and baasskap are being practised among the upper class Coloured community upon their own people.

In the shops he will encounter new names, often for familiar items. Tangerines are 'na(a)rtjies', a cantaloupe is a 'spanspek', little yellow jewel-like things are, unaccountably, Cape gooseberries, curious little green marrows are referred to as 'gems' and sweet-corn cobs as 'mealies'. A butcher may display for sale sosaties, spek and boerewors, and offer chops suitable for braaiing and skirting for rations. The grocer or supermarket will have mealie meal, samp, mealie rice, maizena and mabela (malted or otherwise), suurdeeg, maas, or even mahewu spelt half a dozen ways, in cartons, maaskaas, biltong, jars marked 'atjar' and 'blatjang', tins of 'breyani' and pickled fish. The wine merchant's shop will be called a bottle-store, or perhaps an off-sales and may in addition to the familiar wines and spirits offer for sale Hanepoot, Nagmaalwyn, Jerepigo and buchu brandy, as well as the Van der Hum he may have encountered in Europe. A fishmonger will offer kingklip, stockfish and kob, and possibly galjoen, or else say apologetically he

1. A 65-year-old-man ... was 'blown off' the breakwater ... last night and lay for 13 hours among the dolosse, fearful that he would be drowned by the rising tide. Argus 27.9.75, p. 2.

has only 'reds' today, bony but well flavoured or suggest a Miss Lucy or a daggerhead, or perhaps some smoked snoek from the Cape. The menu at his hotel may well offer all of these, though Miss Lucy will probably appear as red stumpnose (or stompneus) and the snoek may be presented 'smoored', while the meat dishes may well include curry with sambals, bobotie or tomato bredie.

Clothing seems more familiar, and he may have already bought British made 'veldtschoen' overseas, though 'children's broekies' and advertisements for 'long sleeve(d) skippers' may seem odd. Trying out his newly acquired vehicle which the dealer called a 'bakkie' and mysteriously advertised as 'for sale voetstoots' he may find himself adjured to 'Ry Versigtig' some distance before the English sign says 'Drive Carefully', and may repeatedly encounter 'Stadig' as he drives through something called, perhaps, Hell's Poort.

On a very superficial acquaintance then, the stranger will encounter a surprisingly varied vocabulary long before he has scratched the surface of our history or laws, and without having encountered a single wild bird or beast, flower or tree, or having really begun to make the acquaintance of the terms or customs of Black Africa. It is noticeable also that he has not found an ou or some kêrel to offer him a sopie or a dop, to tell him of his babelaaas, his bokkie or even his new chorrie or to ask him to jol round for a goef. In fact the whole of the colloquial vocabulary is still beyond his ken.

1.9 Categorisation

It can also be seen that the words he may come across 'in a day's march' fall naturally into certain groupings. These groupings form the nucleus of the experimental categorisation scheme adopted for the dictionary. A rough examination of these approximately one hundred and twenty words and twenty three formatives of the random place names suggested may serve to illustrate this.

- (a) Afrikander, Boergoat, Boerperd, Dorper, Dormer, hamel, Inkona cattle, fat lamb, (un)wisselled, No Objection Permit, camp, land camp, grazing camp, well camped, improvement, irrigation farm, kraal, dry lands, oulandsgras, rooigras, veld, mixed veld, vlei, veld, vlakteveld, fat lamb production, game ranching, hunting, fountains, boreholes, swarthaak.

- (b) donga, spruit, vlei, vlakke, veld, fountain, poort, berg, platteland.
- (c) stinkwood, yellowwood, blackwood, kiasat, rusbank, riempie chair, bankie, koskas, jonkmanskas, wakis, bakkis, stand, zinc roof, Cape Dutch style.
- (d) faction fight, battle stick, panga, assegai, kraal, impi, tribesmen.
- (e) dominee, Kerkbode, predikant.
- (f) jukskei, volkspele, braaivleis.
- (g) bakkie, Ry Versigtig, Stadig.
- (h) vel(d)skoen, broekies, skippers.
- (i) boet, tante, Coloured, Bantu.
- (j) na(a)rtjie, Cape gooseberry, spanspek, gem (squash), mealie.
- (k) 'reds', red stumpnose, Miss Lucy, daggerhead, snoek, stockfish, kob, kingklip, stompneus, galjoen.
- (l) spek, sosaties, boerewors, skirting, rations, braai, smoor, sambal, bobotie, bredie, pickled fish, atjar, blatjang, breyani, mealie meal, mealie rice, samp, mabela, suurdeeg, maizena, maas, mahewu, maaskaas, biltong.
- (m) homelands, separate development, petty apartheid, verligte, verkrampte, overseas, apartheid, Administrator, Herstigtes, Immorality Act, baasskap, exit permit, voetstoots.
- (n) dagga, malpitte, zols.
- (o) bottle store, off sales, hanepoot, buchu brandy, jerepigo, nagmaalwyn, Van der Hum.
- (p) Names: poort, bron, berg, fontein, krans, kop, kuil, de, niet, doorns, riet, wel, nooit, brak, schoon, mooi, uitsig, heil, morgen, ster, twist, gedacht, verdient.

It is noticeable that several of the words in this sample may fit into more than a single category, in particular the place name formatives

which are, as 'topographical' nouns in regular use for features of the South African landscape, independent entries in the Landscape and Places category. Similarly, the timbers in the furniture section, yellowwood, stinkwood and blackwood feature among the trees just as panga, assegai and battle stick will belong both in the 'African World' category and that of Hunting Weapons and War, as will faction fight and impi.

The categories should, I hope, prove helpful in listing, both for the stranger and the South African user, words which belong together in such a way that an immediate 'overview' of the words having bearing on a particular topic or constituting a broad lexical set is possible. Thus a settler or visitor interested in farming will find Category 11 a list of about 430 words with bearing on stock farming, animal husbandry, agriculture and pastoral topics, all together as a set, all alphabetically available in the main body of the entries, each marked with the category number 11 (and any other appropriate one) to be looked up individually at need from a ready reference table to category headings. Similarly the vocabulary of politics and Government is listed at 4b State.¹

Specialist vocabularies, botany, ornithology, ichthyology, zoölogy, herpetology² etc. he will find on the whole poorly catered for, but it is hoped that the Bibliography will list useful titles for those who wish to delve deeper than the everyday 'run of the mill' flora and fauna found in this text.

The separation of the more frequent place name formatives into separate entries will enable the stranger to check up on many of the multiple structures of the place names of our country discussed in detail in Chapter IV 4.4 and briefly at 4.2 (Category 27) and, I hope, give him the satisfaction of knowing that the name of the farm he is thinking of buying means, say, 'Well Earned', 'Morning Star' or 'Beautiful View.'

1.10 Other Features of the Text

The Pronunciation Key, treated in detail in Chapter II, has been made as simple as possible for the newcomer who speaks no Afrikaans but who may have a smattering of French, German or

1. Category 4 Church and State is subdivided as (a) and (b)

2. See Chapter IV 4.1 on the 'randwoordeskat' of South African English, also Chapter I p.5 first paragraph and footnote 1.

Italian. As far as possible an analogue from one or more of these languages is given for non-English consonants, vowels and diphthongs.

There are two further aspects of the text which have bearing on the problems of the stranger. The labelling system discussed in detail in Chapter 4.3 is designed to avoid as far as possible pitfalls for the unwary by the use of the label Objectionable, (Obj.) as a caveat against the use of 'unsuitable' terms of the character of which he is unaware, and Unacctpt. for what is, in the wording of the Shorter Oxford Dictionary 'not in decent use.'

The second aspect is really intended equally for the stranger and the non-stranger; that is an attempt at cross reference to other dialects of English in other parts of the world. This is mentioned above and discussed with examples in Chapter IV 4.5. For the South African it is there mainly for interest, but also as an attempt to show that parallels do exist elsewhere, and that the phenomena of dialect are not as isolated as one is apt to think.

For the non-South African however this type of cross reference may be, in certain cases, really enlightening. If he is familiar with the vocabulary of British India, nullah placed side by side with donga, sahib with baas, nabob or the tai-pan of Hong Kong, with randlord and so on, this should add a useful dimension of meaning for him, as will the comparison of the sawdust nobility or lumber king with the sugar baron of Natal, for one familiar with Canadian usage. Conversely, though an American will be in little doubt what hunting means in South Africa, the Englishman who envisages himself galloping over his vlakte veld in a pink coat should find enlightenment in this text; as he should with borehole (usually to do with coal mining in England) which to an Australian with his equivalent bore would be no problem. There are particularly interesting parallels between South African English and Australian, ^{Can}Canadian, and also Jamaican English, though these latter items are more tentatively offered.

1.11 South Africanisms

Returning to the problems, for the moment, of the dialect lexicographer, there has been in the case of the preparation of this text, a major naming dilemma, though the basic terms of reference for South African English as conceived for this work, have remained unchanged. The requirements of the research grant,

the Institute for the Study of English (and the publisher) have all required that South African English form part of the title. The precedent set by the tradition, however, is that the suffix -ism be attached to the name of the dialect as in Pettman's Africanderisms, C. P. Swart's Africanderisms: A Supplement to the Rev. Charles Pettman's Glossary of South African Words and Phrases and of Place and Other Names, M. D. W. Jefferies's Afrikanerisms, and further from home A Dictionary of Canadianisms edited by Walter S. Avis, and A Dictionary of Americanisms by Mitford Mathews. There are, on the other hand, The Australian Language, not however a dictionary as such, the Dictionary of Jamaican English, the massive Scottish National Dictionary, the four volume Dictionary of American English on Historical Principles¹ and the really 'way out' title Hobson-Jobson, the glossary of Anglo Indian Terms.²

The inward struggle for and against the term South Africanisms has been difficult. On the one hand its use would have kept the purists at bay; on the other, as the publisher of the Dictionary pointed out to me some time ago, -ism does all too often carry an unfavourable nuance. He suggested, I think correctly, that -ism was inclined to be associated in many people's minds with solecism and that the work might well be regarded as an anthology of errors. Even the facetious phrase 'ologies and isms' places both suffixes in an invidious light.

It is with genuine disquiet, however, that I have abandoned the safe and comfortable mooring South Africanisms. I have too often been attacked with a contemptuous 'Are you even calling that South African English?' or similar comment, not to have the liveliest dread of remarks of this kind from either the informed or the uninformed critic. However, in spite of having learned from experience not to chance my arm, I have opted for the term required of me both for the dictionary itself and for this dissertation.

The Introduction to Part II is that due to appear in the published text. It is written, of course, for the lay person, and in the hope that it will enable the reader to use this handbook either for the indulgence of curiosity, in fact for pleasure, or for the finding of

1. I have not had access to this text edit. Sir William A. Craigie and James R. Hulbert, Chicago 1938-1944.

2. These titles appear in the References: Bibliography, Section I.

useful or interesting information. It sets out, I hope, reasonably simply, what is encompassed for this work, by the term South African English, and explains fairly briefly the aims of the dictionary as well as features peculiar to it, in particular the categorisation given here in Chapter IV 4.2, which is designed to follow the introduction in the published version.

What the text contains is my responsibility, and for me a valid representation, within my terms of reference, of what I have set out to describe. 'But a man is master of only his own speech, not that of other men,'¹.

1. Antoine Arnauld trans. La Logique ou L'Art de Penser, Chapter XIV.

CHAPTER II

The Problems of Phonetic Representation of South African English for a Dialect Dictionary

2.1 Introductory Note

Since the system described in this chapter was devised ¹, an international conference on Lexicography in English has been held (June 5th, 6th and 7th, 1972) by the New York Academy of Sciences and its proceedings published as Volume 211, June 8th, 1973 of the Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences. ²

Part III of the Conference, under the Chairmanship of Arthur J. Bronstein was entitled Pronunciation: Theory and Practice. Those contributing to it either papers or remarks in discussion appear from the proceedings to have been at one in the opinion that the treatment of pronunciation in dictionaries is a tough problem for phoneticians and those employed by commercial companies alike: I quote only one of these participants: Edward Artin of the G. and C. Merriam Co., ³ Springfield Massachusetts. In his paper, entitled Dictionary Treatment of Pronunciation: General, he suggests 'an alternative title might have been "The Joys and Grievs of One Who Has Been for 42 Years a Harmless Drudge" - with perhaps heavy emphasis on the grieves. Indeed grieves there have been, and it seems a safe bet that there is one shared by most who have the job of inserting pronunciations in a general dictionary, namely the actual or purported want of any widespread desire among those who buy such dictionaries for the kind of alphabet that we would prefer to transcribe in.'

2.2 The Script

The phonetic transcriptions designed for my purposes are in a notation based as far as possible upon that of the International Phonetic Association (hereafter IPA). ⁴ There are, however, special problems which arise in the transcription of any dialect such as South African

1. Originally for Towards a Dictionary of South African English, 1971.
2. Lexicography in English (see McDavid and Duckert).
3. Publishers of Webster's Dictionaries.
4. F.G. Cassidy and R.B. Le Page have used the IPA symbols in their Dictionary of Jamaican English (1967).

English (hereafter SAE), which has firstly a large number of borrowed, non-English sounds and secondly a wide range of phonetic materialisations among different speakers. To the phonetician designing a system for non-specialist users, which attempts to cover these in transcription and description, even without typographical or numerical restrictions, they present very real difficulties. There are three major problems:

- (i) At the simplest level, anything like an accurate transcription is likely to present printing difficulties, particularly when it is desirable to keep down the number of actual symbols, not only because they are not available as part of a printer's normal stock-in-trade,¹ but also because too many will confuse the reader. A 'broad' transcription which would be easier to print would probably not reflect adequately the sounds it was intended to represent, since use of the length mark as the sole distinguishing feature in transcribing sounds which differ in quality as well as in length e. g. [u:] (pool) [u] (pull), irons out distinctions which should, for our purposes, be maintained. The system has therefore been designed as a fairly 'narrow' one, in spite of the fact that compromises have had to be made in certain cases where analogues for the pronunciation key have proved difficult. (These are discussed in detail in Section 2.3: The Non-English Sounds).
- (ii) The second problem is that of the number of variant pronunciations which should be given. This is one of the problems referred to by Bronstein in the Proceedings mentioned in the introductory note to this chapter. Most speakers of SAE use a somewhat anglicised pronunciation of items borrowed from Afrikaans or from the African languages, which are rarely technically 'correct' versions of the originals, and which, in the SAE context would often sound affected if they were. Our primary source for pronunciation, after all, is the dialect speaker of SAE as mother-tongue, not the native speakers of the many languages which have influenced SAE.

It is probably undesirable on the whole to give the impression that SAE, containing as it does items from many languages,

1. A font of phonetic type containing most of the symbols used has since become available.

is ordinarily studded with gems of foreign pronunciation as are the idiolects of those few English speakers who enjoy inserting numbers of perfectly articulated French words into everyday conversation, or the Anglo-Indians described as exhibiting 'Pedantic affectation of familiarity with the native languages'¹

Variants, therefore, have been kept down to a minimum and alternatives offered only where such knotty items as the diminutive suffixes, or alternative stress patterns occur, or where the choice of [a], [æ] or [ɑ] might seem arbitrary, e. g. Africander.

- (iii) The third and greatest difficulty is the description and representation of the non-English sounds in borrowed items without the aid of specialist vocabulary which would confuse and irritate the layman. Normally of course the sounds of English are described in a dictionary by cross reference within the language itself: thus the vowel in earth, spelt as in hearth and heart, but sounding like that of pert, heard, bird and burn, can be indicated by comparison with an item common enough to be unambiguous. In the description of the sounds of SAE, however, cross-reference to other languages is necessary.² Providing a guide for the lay reader untrained in phonetics and possibly without experience of French or German cannot but raise genuine problems of written communication. At best the analogical principle of sound description is inferior to the articulatory; but to the lexicographer preparing an illustrative key to English and Non-English sounds for Non-South African, as well as South African readers, no other method is available. The question of the choice of language/s of exemplification and of analogues immediately arises, and of course some sounds present more difficulties, for varying reasons, than others.

The Non-English sounds, their transcription, description and analogues are dealt with below.

1. G. Subba Rao Indian Words in English (1969), p. 3.
2. There is a parallel problem in exemplifying the qualities of the eight Cardinal vowels: 'As in French si' etc.

2.3 The Non-English Sounds

2.3.1 The Consonants

- (1) [r] The rolled (r) optional in such words as poort or kafferboetie is given in parentheses within transcriptions to indicate that it can be, and usually is dispensed with in SAE. It is described as being comparable in quality with that of the rolled 'r' in Scottish English,¹ or that of Afrikaans.
- (2) [x] [ç] The velar and palatal fricatives as in galjoen and geelbek have been dealt with in transcription by using the symbol for the velar fricative only, [x]. As these two sounds are in complementary distribution, the velar occurring with back vowels and the palatal with front, this simplification seems both justifiable and desirable, particularly as the usual symbol for the palatal fricative [ç] may well be confused with the [s] sound in 'Français'. It would be possible to describe the palatal fricative by analogy to the sound in German ich, but this is too often thought to be [ʃ] as in 'finish' by British English speakers to be a valid comparison for lexicographical purposes.

The description therefore has been limited to 'as in Scottish loch, German ach'.

- (3) The voiceless lateral fricative [ɬ] was not included in the earlier draft table of phonetic symbols² as at that stage of the work the need for it had not arisen. Items such as hlonipa, kehla, kahle in which [l] would not suffice have made it necessary to adopt this extra symbol. The single example of the voiced lateral fricative so far encountered, amadlozi, clearly would not justify the inclusion of the symbol [ɮ]. Apart from the fact that most speakers of SAE could not and would not use this sound, there is the undesirability of endeavouring to explain a sound which occurs only in Zulu.³ [dl] is therefore used as a compromise, as the use of a voicing diacritic [ɬ̥] would require technical description beyond the scope of a dictionary pronunciation key.

1. I am assured that the Scottish rolled r is 'entirely different' by Professor L. W. Lanham (personal communication). However I know of no other well-known English dialect with a consistently 'rolled' r, and feel that as an analogue this should serve its purpose.

2. Designed for Towards a Dictionary of South African English, 1971

3. Principles of the International Phonetic Association, 1965.

- (4) The palatal plosive [c]. This is of course regular for most Afrikaans¹ speakers but rare for SAE speakers, who would normally use [tʃ] or [k] according to context unless determined to display their ability to pronounce this difficult sound correctly. For purposes of transcription this sound is particularly awkward since a table of phonetic symbols would be somehow incomplete without it, on the one hand, and transcriptions of the tj and dj spellings are likely to reflect the [tʃ] or [k] pronunciations on the other. The consequence of this is that the inclusion of the palatal plosive will involve a regular alternative pronunciation for any word in which it occurs in borrowings from Afrikaans, and a description 'like a k sound produced forward on the hard palate' in the pronunciation key.

(The same sound in combination with w, in Xhosa spellings tyw as in utywala, obviously is beyond the scope of a simplified pronunciation system of this sort and only the roughest [tʃw] (as in Zulu utshwala as opposed to Xhosa utywala) can be attempted here.)

- (5) A closely related problem is that of the clicks. It is clearly unrealistic to expect a lay reader or user of a dictionary to master distinctions between dental, lateral and palatal clicks - let alone their contextually governed variants - or to become au fait with the rather non-representational symbols for them. On the other hand to level them all down to [k] is somewhat cavalier treatment. As a compromise, a note has been added to the table roughly explaining the clicks, and a marker [+] adopted to follow the transcription of any word containing one. This will obviate, for example, the somewhat unsophisticated rendering [ˈtʃkɔ̃] for Tixo, and will be a relatively undemanding signal that there is more to that particular transcription than meets the eye. This note reads as follows:

'In words borrowed from the African languages the c, x and q spellings represent clicks of three different basic types. c represents the dental click formed behind the teeth on the teeth ridge, rather like the English 'dismay sound' variously spelt tut tut, tch tch, tsk tsk. x or xh represents the lateral click, formed at the side of the mouth, and q the palatal click formed at the hard palate. Approximations are not available for these.

In the interests of simplicity therefore, they are all

1. Professor Willem de Klerk tells me that speakers of Afrikaans can be divided into [kʰ] and [cʰ] speakers. (Personal communication.)

transcribed as [k] sounds, a quite usual SAE way of rendering them.

The presence of a click in a word is indicated by [+] following the transcription thus: Tixo ['tĩkǒ +]

It is with regret that a proper rationalisation of this knotty phonetic problem has been abandoned for the present text. It is perhaps better, however, to be guilty of cavalier treatment towards a relatively small number of items than towards what may be a relatively large number of users of this text. [For the same reason the implosive [ɓ] has been disregarded.]

- (6) The plural markers [-s] vs [-z]. In the transcription of plural nouns the plural marker has normally been transcribed [s] even where the normal English pronunciation of a post-vocalic plural marker would be [z] e. g. [səvs, bũĩŋkĩs]. In the case of ordinary singular nouns only the spelling form is given for the plural, e. g. bankie ['baŋkĩ] n, pl -s. An insertion of [-s] or [-z] after 'n. pl. -s' would clearly be undesirably complex and messy from the typographical point of view, but it is arguable that a parenthesised plural marker within the pronunciation bracket might be desirable, thus ['baŋkĩ(s)]. Since, however, plurals, being usually contextually governed, are normally unconsciously chosen by English speakers so that [-s] plurals follow after voiceless sounds, [-z] plurals after voiced sounds and vowels, and [ɛz] or [əz] plurals after groove fricatives and affricates, an attempt here to insert plurals would probably be a waste of time, and somewhat unattractive in appearance.

2.3.2 The Vowels

The Vowels, as might be expected, are more numerous and more difficult to describe for lexicographical purposes than the few non-English consonants of SAE. The analogical principle must again be followed as far as possible to give approximate sound equivalents. Accurate description of articulations in a dictionary would be irritatingly dull and time-consuming to the non-specialist who requires immediate and simplified answers to pronunciation problems; but 'a as in German ach' cannot be other than a very crude approximation to a more linguistically sophisticated user of such a text.

The phonetician, with such an assignment on hand, cannot but

fall between two stools, so an attempt at compromise has been made. Where possible, analogues from more than one European language have been given, and the spellings of the sounds in question, in examples from the corpus.

For vowel sounds which normally present an articulatory problem to an English speaker e. g. [y] (suur) and [œĩ] (huis), a brief description in non-technical terms of how to produce the sound is given e. g. [y] 'As in French rue, German über. This is pronounced like the sound in pea but with closely rounded lips.'

This type of description¹ cannot be regarded as other than somewhat rough and ready, but it has a chance of helping a non-specialist to make the sound if he so wishes, whereas 'Secondary Cardinal Vowel 1' or 'The high front vowel with lip rounding' would not. If he speaks French or German, of course, the need for the description falls away and he need read no further. For this reason the analogical approximation is in each case given first, with the exception of [ʒ] where the analogue is of dubious value. The description, where it seems necessary, follows, and the spelling/s last, with examples.

This is clearly not the type of phonetic-equivalents table which can run across the foot of a series of pages and then start again as is the practice of many dictionaries. The symbols, however, are very much simpler than those of the Oxford Dictionary and far less numerous². When a final version of the major Dictionary of SAE appears, however, it may well be deemed desirable that an abbreviated pronunciation key should be printed at the foot of each page as in the Oxford and Webster's Dictionaries, or conceivably a 'ready-reference' table printed inside the back or front cover as in the Webster Dictionaries.

Several non-English vowels have been problem sounds in the matter of description³ if not of transcription.

1. The description of [y] above has worked in practice on several subjects.

2. The pronunciation symbols listed in the new Supplement A - G of the Oxford English Dictionary (1972) are ninety-seven in number, made up as follows:

- 30 'ordinary vowels' (containing several diphthongs)
- 27 'long vowels' (containing several diphthongs)
- 16 'obscure vowels' (containing one pseudo-diphthong)
- 24 consonants [+ 11 which 'have their usual English values']

For any reader, lay or trained, to master these would be no mean assignment.

3. A note before the table of vowels, which reads: " 'high', 'low', 'front', 'back', and 'central' refer to the position of the tongue in the mouth" has been added in an attempt to simplify this.

(a) The high short [i] sound as in 'riem' or 'kierie' involves, as do several others, the use of an abbreviating diacritic, since [rim] even in a fairly narrow transcription would signify English 'ream' and in a broad one, English 'rim', neither of which really approximates to riem. As a working diacritic for this purpose I hoped to adopt the sign for the short syllable used in the scansion of metrical feet, [̣], which is a familiar signal of shortness even to school children, since the shortness of these vowels is a very prominent feature.

Printing difficulties, however, make it necessary to adopt a less obvious mark of shortness, in fact the 'breve' of the IPA [̆], which is a smaller version of this. It is listed among the diacritics of the IPA to indicate the weaker element in a diphthong, but it is seldom used except by Daniel Jones who himself describes it as rare.^{1, 2}

The form used by Daniel Jones has accordingly been adopted as abbreviation diacritic, replacing the dot over the [i] thus [ĭ]. This sound occurs frequently both in stressed and unstressed syllables as in kierie ['kɪ̆r̆].

For this sound the description 'short as in German ich or French riz', is given, and a note added to the [i] symbol reads: 'A short form of this [i] sound, very short and slightly lower, is used by most South African speakers for the pronunciation of final 'y' as in city, unlike the [ɪ] of British English in the same position. Where this occurs in the text the symbol [ĭ], is used.'

This oversimplification ignores the fact that the [ĭ] given is a higher vowel than an abbreviated form of [i] for unstressed y spellings. Articulatory description of this would add undesirable and perhaps confusing extra wordiness; and the vowel, being unstressed, would unconsciously be produced lower than the stressed form, as can be observed from the relative heights of the vowels in the SAE (not Afrikaans) pronunciation of kierie.

(b) One of the commonest vowels in SAE usually regarded as a stressed schwa or neutral vowel, as in SAE 'milk' [ɚ̄], has given considerable trouble in description and in actual transcription practice. The symbol [ə̄] described by George Bernard Shaw as 'the e upside down'³ presents no problem.

1. An Outline of English Phonetics, p. 232.

2. This same mark is listed by Webster's Third International Dictionary among its punctuation marks, not in its pronunciation key, labelled 'breve' which is defined in the body of the dictionary; 'breve 2a. a mark placed over a vowel to indicate that the vowel is short b: this mark placed over a syllable or used above to indicate an unstressed or a short syllable in a metric foot.' In view of the 2a definition it is difficult to see why this is not in the pronunciation key. The 2b definition equates it with the scansion mark.

3. Introduction to Pygmalion

Nor does the stressed form of the sound for which [̄] has been added to the symbol, thus [̄̄]; though there is the risk that this might be interpreted as a length mark, as in metrical feet, for what is invariably a short sound.

It is in the interpretation or reading back of the actual transcriptions in which [̄̄] occurs that its inadequacies are shown up, (in that it sounds remarkably 'plat'), and in the description of the stressed form that it becomes well nigh impossible. The usual equivalents given, 'the first syllable of ahead,' 'the second syllable of butter' are unexceptionable for an unstressed vowel. The stressed form, however, might be variously interpreted as the sound in cart [ɑ], cat [æ], cut [ʌ] or curt [ɜ] which is obviously unsatisfactory. For the non-Afrikaans speaking reader 'the sound in Afrikaans sin [sən], sentence' would not suffice, and one is left with a virtually indescribable sound, said, in any case, among English dialects, to be unique to SAE. The unstressed form is however, regular in Australian English e.g. velvet ['velvət], satin ['sætən]¹. I have therefore adopted for the stressed i spelling (the sound for which is usually regarded as a manifestation of schwa) the symbol [ɿ], which relates sound to spelling, looks less strange and unfamiliar and is probably a closer approximation to the pronunciation of most SAE speakers² than the [̄̄], which, though correct for the speaker of Afrikaans, is very 'plat' indeed for one of English: compare Afk [sləm] SAE [slɛm] and British English [slɪm].

The use of this symbol [ɿ] should considerably simplify future transcriptions since it can be applied by the following rule of thumb: 'The i spelling in stressed syllables should be transcribed by means of the symbol [ɿ] unless the i is initial or in combination with [g], [k], [ŋ], preceded by [h] or followed by [ʃ] when the symbol [ɪ] should be used to distinguish the higher vowel conditioned by back and velar consonants and the glottal fricative.³ This is in itself an over-simplification. An experiment I conducted on about 120 students at Rhodes University showed that the raising influence of the velar consonants was regressively stronger, especially in unstressed syllables, so that the vowel in tactic, franctic, plastic was perceptibly higher than that in the reversed syllable in pocket, ticket and bascket: similarly the vowel is higher when followed by [g] as in shindig, than when preceded by it as in haggis or ragged.

1. Sidney J. Baker The Australian Language

2. J.D. O'Connor in Phonetics (Penguin Books 1973 Chapter V p. 155-6) states specifically that [ɿ] is South African and places it in the high central sector of the vowel chart. (This is somewhat higher and slightly further back than I would personally place it, but in line with Stageberg's description of the sound quoted on p 34.) He also postulates on the single, shaky contrast of finish and Finnish an extra phoneme, [ɿ], for S. A. E. It seems to me more realistic to regard this sound as an allophone of the [ɪ] in fig for the rendering of most i spellings in stressed syllables by 'Standard' S. A. E speakers, with the possible exception of milk, and as an allophone of [ə] in unstressed syllables with the exception of those described above. L.W. Lanham regards all these as manifestations of schwa [ə].

3. This only holds good for English. It is not valid for Afrikaans i spellings before back consonants e.g. stinkblaar, winkel, pik, for which [ɿ] is used in their SAE manifestations.

The transcription is thus greatly simplified, but the problem of objective description remains.

Terminology of the 'elocution lesson' type: 'flattened i', 'less brilliant i sound' etc. would clearly be ineligible. An English analogical equivalent, e. g. 'approximately the vowel sound in the second and third syllables of differences' also has disadvantages, as neither of these is a stressed syllable, and the third e is a higher vowel in R. P (A B)¹ than the first.

The description in Towards a Dictionary of SAE was 'This sound [ɪ] is pronounced by many SAE speakers in a retracted and centralised form [ɛ̠]'. This is adequate as far as it goes but omits to make provision for readers to whom phonetic terminology is unknown. A possible 'articulatory' compromise from this might be 'This sound is related to the vowel in pick, but is pronounced with the tongue in a lower position; like the second vowel, in ticket as opposed to the first pronounced stressed.' Again this is a somewhat feeble approximation, especially for South African speakers who, like Australians, tend to use the neutral vowel [ə], [ˈtɪkət], in this position. Norman C. Stageberg² describes the sound as 'high central'³ and remarks 'One way to find the /ɛ̠/ position is to pronounce the vowel of up and then to raise the tongue toward the roof of the mouth.' This of course somewhat undermines the symbol-to-spelling relationship which is, I think, important to maintain, and which is a primary reason for adopting the barred [ɛ̠] symbol. He gives as examples of the occurrence of the vowel ' in the speech of many persons': started, folded, thesis, habit, because, degree, children, roses.⁴ Unfortunately all these occurrences are, predictably, in unstressed syllables. It is tempting to adopt as analogue 'habit' because of the i spelling or even 'thesis', but the sound quality of the vowel in because or degree,^x on account of the following velar consonants, is probably more consistently comparable with [ɛ̠], particularly among SAE speakers, and also probably Australians for whom the it of 'habit' might well be rendered as [ə].

(c) The vowel of kop, pronk is a description problem. The IPA symbol closest to the sound is [ɔ] which, in the narrower transcription, would represent the vowel of corpse or, in the broad transcription that of cop. Neither of these adequately reflects the sound of kop, so again the closest transcription involves the use of the abbreviating diacritic to counter the length of what is regarded as an inherently long vowel in English.

1. 'Received Pronunciation' (Algemeen Beskaafd)
2. Introductory Readings on Language p 298.
3. for which Lanham and Trill normally use [ɜ̠], causing inevitable confusion in such a pair as bid [bɜ̠d] (IPA [bɛ̠d], my system [bɛ̠d]), and bird, IPA [bɜ̠d].
4. Sanford A. Schane Generative Phonology p. 12 - 13 uses the symbol [ɨ̠] for the second vowel in roses and describes it as 'High Back Unrounded', a most difficult and improbable articulatory feat.

In transcription the [ɔ] symbol, abbreviated [ɔ̃], has so far proved quite satisfactory (unlike the long [o] which is not very good for long o sounds of the African language, e. g. lobola.)

The description of [ɔ̃] in Towards a Dictionary of South African English¹ 'as short as in German Kopf' is inadequate, even analogically, as the vowel used, I am told, in most dialects of German, is far closer to the [ɔ] of English op. An Austrian informant has suggested that the o of Gott is shorter and a more suitable analogue and this has, with reservations, been adopted for the table. The closest English approximation to it is given in the Shorter Oxford English Dictionary example as 'authoruty', but this sound could not occur in a stressed syllable in English. Therefore if the first syllable of 'authoruty', pronounced stressed and without lengthening, is cited as its equivalent, it is necessary to enter a caveat to the effect that the stressing of the sound does not make it qualitatively or quantitatively equivalent to the first syllable of author.

(d) The vowel found in stoep, or in both stressed and unstressed forms in kudu, cannot be regarded as qualitatively equivalent to the English vowel in full in spite of being quantitatively equivalent to it. Its articulation, being higher, makes it qualitatively roughly equivalent with that of fool. The same practice has been adopted for this vowel as for the high front short [ɪ], and the standard IPA symbol for [u], normally long, has been given the abbreviation diacritic, thus making it possible to distinguish between [stɒp] English 'stoop' and [stɔ̃p] Afk/SAE 'stoep' which is more consistent with accuracy than the transcription [stɒp] ([ɒ] as in 'full') would be.

This more accurate transcription, however, again creates a problem of description. The Shorter Oxford English Dictionary gives 'unto' and 'frugality' as examples of the short u sound, independent of the sound given for 'full' and 'book', as I wish to do here. Again, however, both examples are of a sound occurring in unstressed syllables only, which detracts from their value as analogues.

A possible solution is to suggest 'as in German Hund'. This is not ideal, but the sound in 'frugality' pronounced stressed by an English speaker would almost certainly become practically indistinguishable from the sound in 'frugal', whereas German Hund given as an analogue would give immediate consciousness of its being a non-English sound.

It is evident that these vital short vowels of SAE - [ɪ] as in riem, [ɛ] as in biltong, [ɔ̃] as in kop and [ɔ̃] as in stoep, pose a common problem to the phonetician endeavouring to 'tame' them for lexicographical purposes. Each has the sound quality of what is normally an unstressed vowel in English, which must be produced stressed, without alteration in quality and without lengthening.

1. Published by the Institute for the Study of English in Africa. Rhodes University 1971.

This is of course a difficulty for any phonetically untrained person to whom the production of a sound as described above would constitute quite a feat, as well as for the phonetician who wishes to describe and illustrate the sounds without undue wordiness or technicality.

(e) The short stressed vowel in rus for which, following standard Afrikaans phonetic practice, the symbol of Secondary Cardinal Vowel No. 3 [œ] is used, again in a short stressed form, is not easy to describe. For this I considered the simplified solution of using the stressed schwa symbol [ə̃] as in Afrikaans pit, with the proviso that if the word was spelt with a u the sound should be pronounced with the lips slightly rounded. However, as the lip-rounding in such a pair as Afrikaans pit and put is phonemic, it was clearly ineligible to use the same symbol, so that [œ] used by Meyer de Villiers¹ has been adopted, with the analogue 'as in French boeuf (pronounced short)' and the rough description 'A short semi-low front vowel with slight lip-rounding.'

(f) The sound in kêrel seems to be relatively rare and the compromise of using [e] as in pen with a length mark [e:] has been adopted thus: ['ke:rəl], in preference to introducing a symbol [ɛ] as a monophthong distinct from the first element of the diphthong [ɛə], which could be confusing. In this case I think the qualitative compromise can be justified, particularly as 'similar to the first element of the diphthong of air [ɛə]', which would probably be the only analogue suitable, would be an inadequate guide. Meyer de Villiers in his rather broader transcription gives the sound of sê and ver as a lengthened version of the sound in met, which further strengthens the case for the omission of a distinct, separate symbol for this sound. However, many SAE speakers, following the English tendency to diphthongise the Afrikaans pure vowels, pronounce the e of kêrel, ver and perske as a diphthong similar to that of care, fair and pear. It will therefore be necessary and desirable to give this simpler and possibly more frequent reading as an alternative.

(g) The low middle vowel of Afrikaans, following standard Afrikaans phonetic practice, has been transcribed [a], perhaps regrettably the symbol for Cardinal Vowel 4 which is low front, and which is also used for the first element in the [aɪ] and [aʊ] diphthongs. The sound for which this symbol is used varies widely from one speaker

1. Meyer de Villiers, Afrikaanse Klankleer (1965) gives French tout which is not, I think, suitable for our purposes and English put which is valid for Afrikaans speakers, (Afrikaans English [pūt]), but not for SAE.

of SAE to another, so that any description can be only the roughest approximation. The first vowel of Afrikaans for example, appears to vary from the extreme of the [ʌ] (as in hut) on the one hand to that of the sound [ɒ] (as in hot) on the other, and it is therefore difficult to limit it satisfactorily in description.

Whether the recording of these two possible extremes in description in the actual table of phonetic symbols is desirable is difficult to decide. However, as such pronunciations as [rʌnt] for 'rand' (virtually equivalent to English 'runt') or [rɒnt] (rhyming with English 'font') are heard, this precaution has been taken for the present.

The analogues given 'as in German ach, Italian altro and French a la mode' should, however, be reasonably helpful.

The same symbol is used for the low-mid vowel, occurring in the five-vowel system of the African languages as in abakweta [,aba'kweta] for want of a more subtly distinctive transcription which would not, I think, be worth the difficulties involved, particularly for the user of the text.

2.3.3 Diphthongs

Speakers of SAE speaking Afrikaans or using borrowed Afrikaans items in their English have a tendency to regular diphthongisation of sounds which are regarded as pure vowels in Afrikaans.

These sounds; (a) the oo spelling of boom, and the o of dominee, and (b) the ee spelling of geel- and the e spelling of brēdie, are therefore transcribed for SAE as diphthongs. The sound transcribed [ϕ] (Secondary Cardinal Vowel 2) by Meyer de Villiers, spelt normally eu in Afrikaans is a similar case. The SAE speaker invariably diphthongises this with or without lip rounding.

The transcriptions of the diphthongs, largely for the sake of English analogues where possible, are less 'true' to the original sounds than they might be.

For diphthongs spelt ee, e, therefore, the formula 'as in pier' has been avoided, in the interests of caution and 'similar to the sound in pier' used instead. In the same way, 'similar to the sound in poor' has been used for diphthongs spelled oo, o. Both these sounds could be more accurately transcribed with a higher vowel as the first

element, [ɨə] and [ʊə], but as these are without convenient analogues¹ [ɪə] and [ʊə] are used, and this shortcoming noted in the table.

(c) For the diphthong for the Afrikaans ou spellings the English [əʊ] favoured by Gimson is used, not the [œu] of Meyer de Villiers. The older transcription [ou] favoured by Ida Ward and by Daniel Jones, though close to the pronunciation of most American English, is remote from SAE which often tends towards the dialectal form [ʌʊ] and in extreme cases to the monophthongisation [ʌ:].

(d) The diphthong in huis and all ui spellings is conveniently transcribed by a digraph similar in spelling to the analogue given: that is [œɪ] 'as in French coup d' œil'. The [œy] transcription of Meyer de Villiers which shows a lip-rounded final element to the diphthong is, I think, not consistent with SAE pronunciation. This sound, being a regular pronunciation problem even to English speaking South Africans, is given as well as the analogue, a brief articulatory description: 'like the sound in English day pronounced with lip rounding', which, if exactly followed would in fact achieve something approaching the [œy] sound. The tendency however in SAE speakers to pronounce this sound as if it were the diphthong of sail could make it necessary to offer the alternative pronunciation [eɪ] in cases of the ui spelling, undesirable as this would appear. Thus harpuisbos would have to be transcribed [ˌha(r)'pœɪs, bɔ̃s, 'peɪs-], and many other items would appear equally messy and confusing. Accordingly a note describing the alternative practice has been added to the table and the alternative, though a frequent pronunciation even among some speakers of Afrikaans, omitted from the transcription.

(e) The SAE speaker's diphthong, spelt in Afrikaans eu, transcribed by Meyer de Villiers [ϕ], Secondary Cardinal Vowel 2, has been treated as the obverse of the [œɪ] diphthong and transcribed accordingly as [ɨœ] in such words as keurboom, arikreukel, deurmekaar and verneuk. The analogue 'as in French monsieur' and the description 'the previous diphthong in reverse, or the sound of ear pronounced with slight lip rounding' are given in the table. This sound is of course, like the previous one, very frequently pronounced by SAE speakers without lip rounding as an almost exact equivalent of the ear diphthong as in ['kɪə(r), bʊəɪn]. It seems of

1. Daniel Jones gives happier and influence, both diphthongs occurring in unstressed syllables.

dubious value, however, to offer [ɪə] as an alternative (as in the case of [œɪ] and [eɪ]) and a note similar to that for (d) appears in the table.

2.3.4 Vowels and diphthongs modified by -tjie and -djie

Certain sounds appear to undergo mutation before the diminutive suffix -tjie or -djie, particularly if the suffix occurs without an intervening consonant, though this is not invariable. For example the long aa of naartjie and sewejaartjie remains unchanged, whereas that of rooibaadjie does not. On the other hand short -ie [ɪ] of kiewietjie, oblietjie and wag-'n-bietjie without any intervening consonant, appears not to be influenced by the suffix.

Other a and aa spellings, however, as in matjies, latjie, vaatjie, karbonaadjie, rooibaadjie and babiantjie require to be transcribed by the [aɪ] symbol described as being similar to the sound in pie, which is the closest available approximation in spite of the slight difference in length even for the SAE speaker.

The e spellings appear to represent a higher sound than in most other contexts and are therefore transcribed by using the short [ɪ] as in riem in the words kennetjie, kommetjie, middelmannetjie, mosbolletjie, ribbetjie. In the words in which the e spelling carries stress, however, such as tammeletjie, the [e] symbol (as in pen) has been retained.

The oo and oe spellings seem to be affected in sousboontjie and kalkoentjie, even across the intervening n (as with babiantjie) and the sound in voetjie-voetjie, pens-en-pootjies is similarly affected without it. These few examples cannot be transcribed by any available sound symbol on the existing pronunciation key.

The problem then arises of whether to increase the number of symbols by one for the sake of relatively few items, and to add [ʊɪ] to the list of diphthongs, or whether to use [ʊ+ɪ or better ʊ+ɪ̃] to be interpreted as the reader chooses. The alternative [ɔɪ] as in ploy is, I think, too wide of the mark to be considered.

Even if the diphthong [ʊɪ̃] or [ʊɪ] were added, and marked 'rare in SAE' the question of an analogue would still arise. The sound in French 'oui' is not correct, as, being a semi-vowel glide, the second element is the stronger, and the common American dialect pronunciation of buoy [ui] is not generally enough known to be of value here.

No pronunciation key so far consulted gives a diphthong anything like this (except Daniel Jones's Pronouncing Dictionary where [ui] is given, as a variant only, for the pronunciation of ruin); and the pronunciation of buoy in the American Heritage Dictionary is given as boo'e (apparently a disyllable¹ having the sound of boot and of be in terms of the key provided.) Meyer de Villiers describes his symbol [ui] as one of those 'tekens wat nie internasionaal bepaal is nie.'²

Daniel Jones³ however gives as English diphthong No. 24 [ui] (broad transcription) which could be rendered in the narrow [ʋɪ]. In the examples he gives, valueing, issuing, casuist and ruination, the sound is in every case in a syllable carrying secondary stress (which would not fit, for example, kalkoentjie.) Ruination would otherwise serve well as an analogue, even though there would probably be a tendency to produce the first element as longer and higher than necessary, as in ruin, and the second lower than it in fact is. He says further 'It is always replaceable by the disyllabic sequence u-i which is difficult to distinguish from it.' On the principles of 'entia non sunt multiplicanda' therefore, the sequence [ũĩ] which is, I think, closer than [ʋɪ], is being used, to be interpreted by the reader as he chooses for these cases, and for the spelling oei as in foeitog, as either would be likely to be a fairly satisfactory approximation to the correct sound.

The pronunciation table evolved for the final text follows:

1. Abercrombie (Elements of General Phonetics, 1967, p. 60) remarks that 'A sequence of two vowels which occupy two syllables, as in gnawing or ruin is not a diphthong'.
2. Afrikaanse Klankleer, bl. 13.
3. An Outline of English Phonetics, p. 125.

PRONUNCIATION KEY

TABLE OF PHONETIC SYMBOLS

Approximate sound values of symbols for South African English

CONSONANTS

[p, b, t, d, g, k, f, v, s, z, h, m, n, l] have their usual agreed English speech value.

Non-English sounds are marked *

- r like normal English initial r as in rat. This r in initial position is rolled as in Scottish English by some SAE speakers.
- *(r) the parentheses indicate that some speakers omit this sound altogether. This (r) when sounded is rolled as in Scottish English or Afrikaans by some SAE speakers, e.g. poort [pʊə(r)t].
- ŋ as in ring
- dʒ as in judge
- tʃ as in church. This is a frequent SAE pronunciation of *[c], the palatal plosive. (see below)
- *c this sound is rare for SAE speakers who usually pronounce it as [tʃ] (see above) or [k]. [In Afrikaans it is spelt tj or dj and sounds like a [k] produced forward on the hard palate e.g. naartjie [narci].]
- θ as in thin, pith
- ð as in then, tithe
- ʃ as in shine, finish
- ʒ as in pleasure
- j as in yellow. The Afrikaans spelling is j e.g. ja = yes.
- *x as in Scottish loch, German ach. The Afrikaans spelling is g or gg e.g. gogga = insect.
- *ʒ as in Welsh Llandudno: found in African language borrowings spelt hl e.g. hlonipa = reverence, kahle = well, also in all Zulu place names containing this combination e.g. Hluhluwe, Mahlabatini, often erroneously pronounced [ʃl] as in German schloss.
Note: In words borrowed from the African languages the c, x and

q spellings represent clicks of three different basic types. c represents the dental click formed behind the teeth on the teeth ridge, rather like the English 'dismay sound' variously spelt tut-tut, tch tch, tsk tsk.

x or xh represents the lateral click, formed at the side of the mouth, and

q the palatal click formed at the hard palate. Approximations are not available for these.

In the interests of simplicity, therefore, they are all transcribed as [k] sounds, a quite usual way of rendering them.

The presence of a click in a word is indicated by [+] following the transcription thus:

Tixo ['tíkō +]

VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS

Vowels or diphthongs which have no English equivalent are marked *. The example and/or description following each is the nearest approximation to the sound.

Note: 'high', 'low', 'front', 'back' and 'central' refer to the position of the tongue in the mouth.

VOWELS

- *y as in French rue, German über. This is pronounced like the sound in pea but with closely rounded lips. The Afrikaans spelling is uu e.g. suurveld = sour grass veld, occ. u e.g. suring = sorrel.
- i as in pea.
Note: A form of this sound, very short and slightly lower, is used by most SAE speakers for the pronunciation of final y as in city, unlike the [ɪ] of British English in the same position. Where this occurs in the text the symbol [ɨ] is used.
- *ɨ short as in German ich, French riz. The Afrikaans spelling is usually ie as in riem = thong, occ. e before tj e.g. ribbetjie = rib chop.
- ɪ as in pick.
Note: Unless it is initial or in combination with [g], [k] or [ŋ], preceded by [h] or followed by [ʃ], when the symbol [ɪ] is used, this sound is pronounced in a lower form, further back, see [ɨ] below.
- *ɨ̄ Similar to the sound in because, degree pronounced stressed. This is only an approximation: see note on [ɪ] above. The [ɨ̄] symbol is used for i spellings other than the combinations described there, and for the SAE rendering of Afrikaans i spellings, rendered [ē] by Afrikaans speakers and some speakers of SAE.

- e as in pen
- *e: as in French mère, German ähnlich, the [e] sound pronounced long. The Afrikaans spelling is either ê as in sê = say or kêrel = fellow, e before r as in ver- = far, occ è as in nè = not so? See also diphthong [ɛə] p44.
- æ as in pan
- *a short as in German ach, Italian altro, French à la mode. This sound occurs with many variations in both Afrikaans and the African languages which contribute to SAE, spelt a. This description is only an approximation since the variants are between the extremes of the [ʌ] of hut, on the one hand and the [ɒ] of hot on the other.
- ɑ as in par, palm, used in this text for most Afrikaans 'aa' spellings and for some a spellings.
- ɒ as in on, sock.
- o as in corn, call. This symbol is also used to transcribe long 'o' sounds in words borrowed from African languages e.g. lobola = bride price.
- *õ Similar to [ɔ] but short and pronounced stressed, something like the o in German Gott. The quality and duration of the sound are equivalent to that of the first syllable of authority, pronounced stressed. [This does not make it equivalent in quality or duration to the first syllable of author.] The Afrikaans spelling is o as in koppie = hillock.
- ʊ as in book, pull
- u as in boot, rule
- *ũ as in German Hund. Similar to the sound in boot, but pronounced short. Spellings are oe as in Afrikaans stoep = open verandah, and u as in kudu (Afrikaans koedoe) in both stressed and unstressed syllables.
- e as in butter, about. The unstressed central 'neutral' vowel.

- *ɔ̃ the same vowel stressed, a sound said to be unique to SAE. It is standard in Afrikaans e.g. sin [sɔ̃n] = sentence. Some SAE speakers and most Afrikaans speakers use this sound for i spellings e.g. pit [pɔ̃t] Afrikaans 'stone', 'pip', for which the symbol [ɪ̃] is used in this text.
- *œ as in French boeuf (pronounced short). A short semi-low front vowel with slight lip rounding. The Afrikaans spelling is u as in -rus [-roes] = rest.
- 3 as in pert, burn, bird, earth
- ʌ as in but

DIPHTHONGS

Note: In the interests of simplicity and convenience the closest English diphthong has been taken as an example wherever possible.

- ɪə similar to the sound in pier. Afrikaans spellings ee as in geel = yellow, and e as in bredie = stew, hotpot, are rendered as a diphthong by SAE speakers, though not always before f. * [These are pure vowels, not diphthongs, for Afrikaans speakers.]
- ʊə similar to the sound in poor. Afrikaans spellings oo as in boom = tree and o as in dominee = minister are rendered as a diphthong by SAE speakers though not always before f. See * above.

Note: These two diphthongs could more accurately be given with their first elements [ɪ̃] and [ʊ̃] respectively. However, since [ɪə] as in beer, fear, pier and [ʊə] as in poor, sure, are regular English diphthongs they are given as more convenient approximations to the SAE sounds.

- ɛə as in pair, pear. This is also a frequent pronunciation of the Afrikaans long e before r as in kêrel, ver, perske. See [e:] p43.
- eɪ as in pay. The Afrikaans spelling is y as in vry = ^{to} court, ei as eina = ouch!
- aɪ as in pie, but of slightly longer duration. The Afrikaans spelling is aai as in braai = grill, or ai as in assegai = spear.
Note: Before -tj or -dj aa and a spellings are pronounced [aɪ] e.g. vaatje = a small barrel (vat), rooibaadjie = redcoat, latjie = twig.
- ɔɪ as in ploy, coin. Like the [aɪ] sound this tends to be slightly lengthened.

- əʊ as in toe, coal. This is an approximation to the sound of the Afrikaans ou spellings as in juffrou = mistress (teacher).
- aʊ as in prow
- *œɪ as in French coup d'œil. This sound is similar to that of English day pronounced with rounded lips. The Afrikaans spelling is ui, e.g. muisvoel = mousebird (occasionally uy in proper names e.g. Uys, or in Dutch borrowings.) This is often pronounced [eɪ] as in pay by SAE speakers.
- *ɥœ as in French monsieur: the obverse of the [œɪ] diphthong, pronounced like the sound of ear with lip rounding. For Afrikaans speakers this is a pure vowel spelt eu as in deur-mekaar = muddled, verneuk = deceive.
Note: This is often pronounced [ɛə] as in fear by SAE speakers.

OTHER MARKERS

- :
- placed after a vowel indicates that it is of exceptional length.
- ˘
- above a symbol indicates that the sound is short.
- ()
- indicates that the sound within the parentheses is frequently dispensed with or dropped.
- ̩
- placed below a resonant consonant [m̩] [n̩] or [l̩] indicates that the consonant is syllabic i.e. it serves as vowel and consonant in one, e.g. bʌt̩ (button), lit̩ (little).
- ˈ
- placed before a syllable indicates that it carries the primary stress or emphasis in that word, e.g. [ˈbʌskɪt] [krɪsˈænθəməm].
- ˌ
- placed before a syllable indicates that it carries secondary stress in that word e.g. [ˈhænd,bæg] [ˌkæbɪdʒ,lɪf].

Where alternative pronunciations of single syllables occur the alternative is given for the syllable only.

For final syllables the alternative follows a comma and a hyphen thus [ɪnˈdʌbə, -a]: for initial syllables it follows a comma and precedes a hyphen thus [ˌjəˈfrʌv, ,joef-]: for medial syllables it follows a comma and is placed between two hyphens, thus [afɪˈkʌndə(r), -ˈkænd-, -ˈkænd-.]

2.5 Pronunciation spellings

Pronunciation spellings do occur unconsciously in the writing of South Africans. The following instances are from students' essays and occasionally newspapers, etc.

a (for an)	enclude	negative
adjative	fect	necersary
calvanist	fumugant	origonal ⁴
calvanistic	furnature	promenant
congruant	he's (for his	repetative
continuety	Std. VI pupil)	sentance
defenite	hearly (yearly)	unintelligable
definate	incompatable	yeas
despute	interlect	
destinguish	intimadated	
devided	inveriable	

The following spellings illustrate the loss of the unstressed vowel common in speech litrary, diffrent, cordroy, auxillary, billery, syntacticly. Conversely the inability of many South Africans to produce the sequence [lm] without an intervening vowel is sometimes satirised with the spelling fillum.

2.6 References

These appear in greater detail in Section II of the Bibliography.

Abercrombie, David: Elements of General Phonetics, Edinburgh 1967.

Anderson, Wallace L, and Stageberg, Norman C.: Introductory Readings on Language (6 the Sound System of English, Norman C. Stageberg) Holt Rinehart, 1966.

Baker, Sidney J.: The Australian Language.

de Villiers, Meyer: Afrikaanse Klankleer, Kaapstad 1965.

Gimson, A. C.: An Introduction to the Pronunciation of English, London 1962.

Jones, Daniel: An Outline of English Phonetics (9th edition) Cambridge 1962.

Ibid: Everyman's English Pronouncing Dictionary (12th Edition), Everyman 1963.

Lanham and Trail: Pronounce English Correctly, Cape Town 1965.

Ward, Ida: The Phonetics of English, Cambridge. 1962.

Principles of the International Phonetic Association, University College (Reprint 1965).

Pronunciation Keys Consulted:

Webster's Third New International Dictionary 1972.

The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language 1969

Ibid (Paperback Edition) 1970.

The Shorter Oxford English Dictionary.

Chamber's Twentieth Century Dictionary.

Mitford Mathews, Dictionary of Americanisms.

University of Victoria, Dictionary of Canadianisms.

Cassidy and Lepage, Dictionary of Jamaican English.

English Usage in South Africa, University of South Africa 1970-73.

CHAPTER III

The Treatment of Dialect Grammar for
Purposes of Lexicography

3. 1

It has been remarked elsewhere that a dictionary of a dialect will be doing only part of its job if the treatment of the syntactic peculiarities of that dialect is avoided or overlooked. Audrey Duckert¹ underlines the fact that this side of lexicography is both difficult and neglected in her comment in reply to a question about what was being done in dialectology about variations in syntax: 'At the moment the workers in the vineyards of dialectology have their hands more than full with gathering and interpreting data on pronunciation and lexicon. What syntactical matter we are able to get comes to us on tapes and through fieldworkers' observations. Simply put, no one has yet been able to devise a workable questionnaire for gathering syntactic data'. It is, I think, generally agreed that syntax operates at a deeper linguistic level than vocabulary or phonology, with, possibly, the rider that it is in structures rather than in words or sounds that changes are slower or less likely to take place in the evolution of any natural language. That although any language is inevitably dynamic, its grammar or syntactic structure is its most stable aspect.

The same must be true of a dialect of a language. American and South African English differ quite radically in accent and vocabulary, carrying those surface hall-marks for all to see or hear, whereas their deviations from the standard norm in grammar are less obvious and require far greater linguistic subtlety or sophistication to recognise. Nevertheless these deviations exist and constitute an inescapable facet of dialect study, and a major one, in spite of the fact that they are comparatively few and infrequent beside differences of the other two types, and quite as tough an assignment to describe as is the sound system.

In a way it is tougher: posing as it does the difficult question of treatment of grammatical manifestations for lexicographical purposes. There are various ways of doing this, none of which has so far proved wholly satisfactory. Descriptions of syntactic deviances in themselves are not easy without extensive illustrative examples for which there is

1. Lexicography in English (See McDavid and Duckert), p. 67.

no space; but worse than the matter of clarity in description is the problem of deciding, 'what to call the entry', and the fact that they are mostly phenomena of the spoken word.

Most of the more subtle marks of the South African English dialect, unlike what one might term the 'top dressing' of names for things, are apt to be written on the air, as are the sounds of the language, and therefore disregarded. Efforts have been made however to represent the sounds of SAE by means of what Abercrombie¹ calls 'indexical' spelling using the ordinary alphabet. One notable example is the grotesque Ah Big Yaws? of Robin Malan, based on the Strine series (described recently to me by a sensitive and intelligent Australian as 'sick') by Afferbeck Lauder. Another with serious intent, similar to that of Adam Small in Afrikaans in some of his work, is the nonce spelling developed by Sidney Clouts in his 'Hotknife' poems. One of considerable interest to the dialectologist has presumably that intention cited by Horace in the Ars Poetica 'aut prodesse . . . aut delectare: . . .', namely 'Backchat' by Blossom Broadbeam in the magazine Darling. This is a remarkably lighthearted feature, but not only is there an ingenious and recognisable spelling system, there is also evidence of acute awareness of both current colloquial vocabulary and of grammatical usage of a kind seldom seen in print. In the text of the dictionary, therefore, this feature has been extensively used in illustrations of items found in the lists at 3.3, namely the translations from Category 10, and the word class lists which form Category 29. In this Chapter the Darling quotations are of course satirical comment as opposed to genuine material of the corpus summarised in 3.2.

Some of the most characteristic and frequent grammatical manifestations of dialect cannot be historically traced or validated, because these are rare in written texts, though some do come to light by pure accident, particularly in some of the 1820 Settler material: Jeremiah Goldswain for instance was bisey talking according to his own Chronicle; James Hancock records a dialogue in his notebook 'was he at the shooting match by your place?'; James Collett reports 1842 25 March 'Tiger got under my wethers and killed 8 or 9', and 1839 23 Dec. 'frightful sickness under my

1. Elements of General Phonetics, Chapter I.

flocks', and Ethel Emslie that Uncle Jesse was 'ploughing in far lands', a function shift of the adverb to the adjective reminiscent of the English of the Bible still heard in South African speech today where a far way and a far place are in frequent use.

These features which are less obviously 'dialectal' than the borrowed vocabulary or the relatively superficial features of pronunciation, are really more deeply so, being, as has been suggested already, at an altogether different level of consciousness. Material at this level is particularly difficult to represent in lexicographically conventional terms.

The syntax of SAE has two clearly marked if not always classifiable contrasting characteristics which are possibly factors in the grammar of many English dialects - namely the tendencies to redundancies and to short cuts, both of which are clearly observable in American English as well.

These two primary categories of the syntax of this dialect obviously subsume usages of many kinds, and each within itself has dialect features which appear to originate with native speakers, and structures which are translated from those of Afrikaans and of the African languages. Where the question of translated structures occurs it is of course not infrequent that vocabulary is influenced along with the grammar.

It is therefore difficult to draw a hard and fast line between syntax and phonology, and syntax and vocabulary, and some of the 'non-lexical' material appears to inhabit a kind of limbo of language, not belonging to either.¹

Predictably the dialect syntax of SAE is more clearly observable in usage of word classes (parts of speech) other than the nouns, though there are nominalizations of the short-cut type regularly noticeable, such as 'I've been to three twenty firsts in the last month.'

1. Madeleine Mathiot in Grammatical Problems in Lexicography confirms the usual attitude of total separation or non-integration of the syntax with the lexicon exhibiting too, perhaps, muddled thinking in her use of the term 'form' . . . 'American linguists of the present and recent past hold in common some basic notions regarding the nature of the lexicon and its relation to the grammar. In both traditions the lexicon is regarded as the inventory of the elementary meaningful forms of the language while the grammar consists of the set of rules accounting for the make-up and combination of these forms. From these notions follows the practice of associating the investigation of meaning exclusively with the lexicon and that of form exclusively with the grammar.' Lexicography in English (see McDavid and Duckert) p. 39.

Material. The corpus of, for the most part, oral usages on which these tentative syntactic conclusions about SAE are based have been collected over seven years. The main source of dialect grammar is obviously the speakers of the dialect themselves, and oral samples from people in all walks of life have been noted. Some are those overheard in the street or in shops, telephone conversations with widely varying people, children overheard at play, students on the campus, and the remarks of the learned professors themselves. Obviously it has not been possible to write down all the possible samples though I have a fair corpus of such material on file.

There are of course written sources other than those mentioned above. The grammar of SAE is frequently noticeable in print and newspapers, magazines in both text and advertising copy, and in books, both novels and plays. Written sources are more likely to contain vocabulary items than examples of dialect syntax, but the number of examples, from sources where there is not any intentional play on dialect, is surprising, consisting as it does of particles omitted or inserted, suffixes lost or found, and manifestations which are far removed from 'words' to be given the standard lexicographical treatment. Many of these in SAE are further complicated by being translations or transliterations of structures rather than terms. If, however, one wishes to give a faithful, or fairly faithful overall picture of the dialect, the grammatical items or function words and the syntactic structures cannot be neglected, and it is a major problem for the lexicographer as it is with the sound system, to 'tame' such apparently recalcitrant material into a form manageable - and acceptable - in a dictionary.

The fact that the text is a categorised one has made it possible to indicate (by the number 29) any non-noun in the case of verbs, adjectives and adverbs and to mark 'function words' and other such items as 29prep. for prepositions, 29prn. for pronouns and pseudo-pronouns, and 29red. for redundancies. The material intractable for the purposes of the lexicographer is that which is not there, and it has been necessary to write a section (also numbered 29) with omissions as headword and to list beneath it, with examples, some of those bits and pieces of language lost 'by the wayside' in the speech and writing of many South Africans, based on the corpus referred to above.

In the case of such a word as have used redundantly (if we hadn't have known)¹ or reduced in spelling (that must of been the worst part)¹ it has been possible to use have as a headword:

1. 'If F... had of been there I could of asked him', Darling, 25.6.75

similarly in the case of little (he was a small little fellow). The frequently omitted alveolar suffix appears under omissions, but has an independent entry -ed (3 bedroom house, barb wire, old-fashion home, pickle onion flavour).

Many of the translated structural items fall rather between two stools. Translated, or in most cases transliterated, prepositions (by, under, for etc.) appear as headwords in their own right with illustrations of their use, but they are also listed for the sake of completeness and for reference under the somewhat unorthodox headword prepositions. Inevitably too, translated structures give rise to such anomalous-sounding entries as adjective with infinitive (the tree is capable to withstand frost), and third person form of address, another highly characteristic example of a manifestation for which I am unable to devise a more lexicographically elegant title, but which must obviously have a place in a text which purports, and at any rate attempts to treat the dialect as a whole.

Translated structural expressions, which could be regarded possibly as 'vocabulary' items as well, are marked in the text, 10 (Category 10 Expressions, Idiom and Slang¹. Redundancies such as busy (I looked out of the window and the accused was busy cutting Wynand's throat), little cited above, articles (a half an hour, 'shall I bring the karos from the Baas's bed') appear as headwords, but are assembled for reference, as are the omissions and the prepositions, under the 'headword' redundancies.

This, it must be stressed, is only one way of treating this material, and though it could not be regarded as being in any way in line with standard practice, it has the virtues of relative consistency and completeness consonant with keeping the manifestations of the dialect all within one body of text in spite of anomalies and inelegancies of the type mentioned above. Alternative measures are either to omit it, or to deal with it in an entirely separate section of the text in what might be termed a 'non-lexicon'. This latter measure would, by the very nature of the material, involve a degree of repetition since it is virtually impossible to draw a hard and fast line between the syntactic and the lexical. There is, in this text, a section solely devoted to the grammatical material to be found in the Categorized Survey² which is modified for convenience as a type of appendix to this section³. This, however, merely lists and classifies the material which appears in the main A - Z lexicon, from which I do not feel one would be justified in separating it, in the light of its general importance in both speech and writing.

1. Chapter IV 4.2
2. Chapter IV 4.2 Section 29
3. Chapter III 3.3



3.2 Summary of Grammatical Corpus

Here follows a tentative analysis and summary of the various classes of syntactic deviance based on the corpus of grammatical data assembled, under the headings 3.2.1. Short Cuts and 'Borderline Short Cuts, 3.2.2. Redundancies, 3.2.3. Translated Structures, including 'Formulae'

It must again be stressed that this is only one way of classifying the material, and that there must obviously be a great deal of overlap between the first two and the third, since many of the short cuts and redundancies may be traced back to translations of various types. 3.2.1 and 3.2.2 however serve to separate to a certain extent what might be regarded as opposing forces in the grammar of the dialect speaker, the tendency to reduce and the tendency to amplify, in the structures used. Some of the examples which are cited here are quoted in the text of the dictionary, though in some cases written sources showing the same phenomena have come to light since the corpus on which this is based was collected, and have, in preference, been used as illustrations.

3.2.1 Short Cuts and Omissions.

For actual omissions see p23-4 of the dictionary and also 3.3.5 list 9.

1. Function Shift

- (a) Nominalisation of modifiers with resultant loss of nouns.

Come to my twenty first \wedge .

Is yours an automatic \wedge ?

The plains \wedge is mostly mohair and wool. Tailor, Cape Town (showing a plural marker on the nominalised modifier).

Sale. Vauxhall Viva with roadworthy \wedge . Advt. 15.9.75.

Do you go to ballroom \wedge ? (dancing) Schoolgirl.

- (b) Conversion of mode of address to proper noun.

Doctor is coming soon.

Ask uncle.

Sir said I could. (child)

- (c) Conversion of proper noun modifier to head of noun phrase, possibly as a common noun.

He says he wants his Christmas \wedge .

There's someone at the back door asking for New Year \wedge .

- (d) The use of a noun for the adjectival form.

Holland style, Holland beef steak, Holland coat. This is probably a transliteration of Afrikaans Hollands, or perhaps to avoid the confusion of 'Dutch' with Duits : though a similar phenomenon is noticeable in the phrase 'Jew boy.'

One might compare here the now probably obsolete British use of 'Hollands' meaning Dutch gin.

- (e) Adjective for Adverb

See 3.3.5 list 4.

This usage occurs regularly with adjectives borrowed from

Afrikaans which does not have differentiated forms for the adverbial¹, e.g. to swim kaal, walk around haasbek, the fish bite skelm, to look skeef at someone, all of which for English are adverbs of manner. Though the first two could with some verbs be taken to be adjectival subject complements rather than adverbs of manner, as in the English 'He remained calm'. Occasionally the same phenomenon occurs with an English adjective as in It's a far place, a far way to go alone, an overseas trip, overseas interference and in such substandard usage as

Mind you do it good. She plays nice:

though the converse will be found at Redundancies 3.2.2

My new bike goes mooily. (Redundancies 3)

- (f) Substitution of noun phrase a person for indefinite pronouns one (1st person or 2nd person) and someone or somebody (3rd person).

This phenomenon, translation of 'n mens', is exemplified at Translated Structures 3.2.3 No. 10.

- (g) The use of brand names, Proper nouns, as generic terms could also be regarded as a type of function shift.

Vim = scouring powder

Nugget = shoe polish

Hoover = vacuum cleaner (also found as verb
'to Hoover the carpet.')

Aspro = any type of aspirin, though 'Disprin' is
becoming a rival here.

2. Omission of the article or other determiner especially in prepositional phrases (adverbials) or other noun phrases resulting in a carry-over of what might be termed a † generic feature to simple common nouns. This is frequently found in speech and writing:

He walks to ^ office.

They're back from ^ holiday.

They're on ^ honeymoon.

They're at ^ bioscope.

Let's go to ^ flick.

Do you play ^ piano

Learn to play ^ guitar in two weeks (Advt.)

3. Omission of Particles This is possibly comparable with the standard American usage out the door, out the window etc. but occurs usually in the speech of children or in substandard usage:

1. See note on these at 3.3.1, (4) p 74.

Be careful _∧ your feet. (of)
I'd laugh _∧ he fell off. (if)
I wouldn't mind _∧ that stove was mine. (if)
[Come _∧ look here (and): also comparable with
American English]

4. Omission of Inflections This is basically a substandard practice.

(i) The third person singular present inflection (the agreement morpheme).

He always come _∧ when we ('re) not expecting him.
David drink _∧ too much.
My wife play _∧ the piano.
What _∧ that got to do with it?

(ii) The possessive suffix:

We beat the Oudtshoorn Women _∧ Club three - nil.
He wants a month _∧ supply.

5. Simplification of negative structures by the use of never (possibly from Afrikaans nooit used in emphatic denial.)

(i) As a substitute for didn't.

The cluster: tense + do + negative + verb.

e. g. past + do + negative + see → didn't see him

is frequently rendered as

never + tense + verb

never + past + see → never saw him

(ii) Among children never is heard either as the above or as a coded pro-predicate, such interchanges as the following are common:

Look what you've done!

I never did it.

You did.

I never.

You did, I never ... etc.

In neither instance can never be said to carry its standard meaning of not ever. Thus:

'I always knew he was no good but I never told him'

where 'I didn't ever tell him' could well be substituted.

In SAE never is regularly used to refer to a specific occasion:

'Sorry Ma, I never saw you'.

or the instance quoted in the dictionary:

.... says he was interested in closing the door and

as he went to it he never observed Col. — at the door.

Daily Dispatch 16.8.72.

6. Simplification of Verb Structures

There are numerous short cuts used in verb structures in SAE in addition to those of the negative cited at 5. above. These are for

convenience numbered, though there are instances where these may be seen to overlap, for example (i) with (v).

(i) Transitive verbs used intransitively.

Did they send ^ yet (for 'Have they sent X yet?')

They(re) coming to fetch ^ just now.

Have B's delivered ^ ? [cf. slogan 'We call and Deliver!']

I've been learning ^ since six o'clock. Schoolgirl.

Before I left ... I had learnt that Jane and Hugo had divorced recently Fair Lady ll. 6. 75

A. I was looking for some shoes in town.

B And did you find ^? (see also (v))

I posted (planted) (ploughed) last week.
(see also (v))

(ii) Omission of complement noun or pronoun is probably related to (i) and (v).

I've come to wish you ^ .

They come from East London now that we can't get ^ from Port Elizabeth any more.

I don't know if we still have ^ , but I'll look.
(see also (v)).

(iii) Reduction of phrasal verbs to single transitive verbs resulting in such usages as:

Granny didn't reply ^ me. (child)

Who lectures ^ you? (University Teacher).

It is no good lecturing ^ and moralising ^ them.
(Newspaper Article).

Why didn't you explain ^ me? (child).

They'll moan ^ us for wearing our blazers. (schoolboy).

The explain me usage can give rise to a peculiarly jumbled form of the predicate pattern involving both direct and indirect objects:

Vivienne explains me the assignment, then I write it. (Student)

S V IO DO
cf. Vivienne gives me the assignment, then I write it.

(iv) The Intransitive use of a reflexive verb:

Even you can transform ^ with Blush-On (Advt.)

(v) The 'Context-reliance' Omission of Complement.

I have adopted the above term to describe the phenomenon by which, normally in conversation (I have not encountered this in writing) the second speaker omits the object or complement of the verb in his sentence, normally a pronoun, which would code for the noun used by the previous speaker.

Examples of this are indicated at (i) and (ii).

In conversation such interchanges are regularly heard

- A. Would you like some more cool drink?
- B. No thanks I still have \wedge .

- A. Can I pour you another cup?
- B. Yes please if you've still got \wedge .

or

Where is the soda, have we still got \wedge ?

The context need not however be a verbal one. 'Have you had?' and 'Do you want?' may occur as actual offers of food and drink to which the reply may be as above: 'No, I still have \wedge thanks', or 'Yes please, if there still is \wedge '.

- (vi) Confusion of infinitives or other non-finite structures with -ing forms of verbs occurs usually among children, and may be perhaps compared with the adjective with infinitive structure (I'm lazy to get up) mentioned in 3.1 p. 51..

We're not allowed reading comics [to read]
 They(re) not allowed putting sugar in their tea [to put]
 He's not competent managing that business [to manage]
 Like a reformed alcoholic, if I wish to remain an
 ex-smoker I dare not touching another cigarette as
 long as I live [touch], E.P. Herald, 19.7.75
 Bags I having a seat [have]

cf. The tree is capable to withstand frost
 Adjective Infinitive

- (vii) The omission of aspectual have in the have + participle structure showing perfective aspect, which is more typical of American than South African English, is also found, but more probably as a substandard use as in the quotation below, or as a result of the influence of American writing or comic strips.

'You['ve] just asked me that question ... We['ve]
 'all got to die sometime.'

A Winter Vacation D.A.C. MacLennan

[The usage of Dagwood, Hagar, Beetle Bailey and their fellows showing such phenomena as

You \wedge just invented a new weapon.
 Dagwood, Mr Dithers \wedge just called.
 What happened? (for 'What's happened?')

cannot be regarded as truly South African and has therefore not been included in the entry omissions, 323-4 of the text mentioned in 3.1 though this short cut is undoubtedly used by many speakers.]

'Borderline' Short Cuts

I call these 'borderline' since they appear to be at any rate partially phonological manifestations which by short-cutting do have syntactic consequences.

1. In speech primarily, but also in some writing, it is noticeable that the reduced are, 're [ə] ending is dropped following pronouns which are open syllables. This is a pervasive tendency heard regularly even among educated speakers over the air.

You^ looking tired.

They^ coming next week.

'We^ jis discussing the common household fly.' Darling

They^ in and out all blerry day, man. Ibid, 25.6.75.

This does not appear to be a straightforward phonological manifestation, however, since we're [wɪə] would not become [wi:] with the loss of the schwa ending. Similarly they're [ðeə] would not become [ðeɪ] or you're [juə], [ju].

2. The loss of the alveolar suffix -s either as the third person present tense singular (the agreement morpheme Z_3), or the possessive suffix 's or -s described as Omission 4: That is, the loss of the (Z_1), Z_2 or Z_3 morphemes¹. The commonest manifestation of this type of short-cut in both writing and speech is of the following type, which may perhaps be regarded with 3., which follows, as the most frequent pronunciation spelling: florist bill, butcher shop, barber shop, brussel sprouts, for interest sake.
3. The loss of the alveolar suffix -ed, -d, or [t] called by Gleason² the D_2 morpheme, is even more frequent, and regularly found in print. The following examples are taken from newspapers and magazines only. Old Fashion Ginger Beer, barb wire, three room house, tile roof house, match your colour shirts, colour recipe book, scarlet check table cloth, long sleeve shirts, double storey house, thatch roofs caught fire, process products, process cheese, orange colour car, pickle fish, pickle onion, high heel shoes, stain glass window, high price goods, two tooth hamels, pint size picasso, king size ...

1. Gleason Introduction to Descriptive Linguistics (1955-1961) 1961 edit., Chapter VIII, p.96 - 104

2. Ibid.

3.2.2 Redundancies

These are fairly numerous in South African English and are given as far as possible as headwords in their own right in the text of the dictionary. With the exception of busy (at 3.2.3 number 1) these are briefly summarised here.

1. Articles (a) a half an hour, a sixpence, do a half of it (cf. do a quarter of it).

(b) This is found most commonly in the highly characteristic third person form of address (dictionary text Part II, p. 491) in such usage as, the uncle, the baas, 'Please baas, I will dig for the baas' Dan Jacobson - [In slightly facetious forms of reference, not exclusively South African, the Mum, the girl friend etc. can be heard usually replacing my.]

2. The pronoun what in comparative structures following than (headword what in Part II, p. 561).

I feel much better than what I have ever felt (Advt.)

He's much older than what I am.

...And we didn't want any worse name than what we already had ... H. C. Bosman, A Bekkersdal Marathon.

This, like the third person form of address mentioned at 1. is probably the influence of Afrikaans 'Hy is ouer as wat ek is.'

3. The adverbial suffix used on borrowed adjectival items heard in the speech of children mooily, lekkerly.

My new bike goes mooily I'm telling you.

4. Have:¹ this occurs redundantly especially following had, and in the pronunciation spelling of [headword have, page 178].

We wouldn't of ('ve) trained her if we had have known she was in foal.

I'd 've caught him if he hadn't 've jumped up.

If F. had of been there I could of asked him, Darling, 25.6.75

5. Negatives: The redundant no and other uses of the negative are treated both at no p. 316 and negatives, uses of, p311 of Part II.

1. For form have to see also must Translations 11 (m).

It has been suggested¹ that the intrusive, non-negative no has come into South African English from the regular habit in Afrikaans speech of using Nee as a sentence initiator.

No, I'm fine now. No, that'll be a pleasure. No, certainly, etc.

This mystified an English colleague to such an extent that he once asked 'Why do South Africans always say 'No' when they mean 'Yes'?' A similar phenomenon is Yes-no which will be found among the formulae in 3. 2. 3 Translation 11 (w).

6. Interpolations: these appear 'sprinkled' about in much South African speech and are not translated. Most contribute nothing to the meaning of the sentences in which they are heard, but give some of the most distinctive colour to colloquial English: darem, mos, sommer, maar. These, indispensable as they are to many of us, are remarkably difficult for the lexicographer to define in use or to translate. The Afrikaans description modale bywoord 'modal adverb' has been adopted for 3. 3. 5 and for Category 29 (Chapter IV 4. 2) though this is not found, I think, in English descriptions of word classes.

7. Other redundancies from borrowed structures appear in translation: These are headwords in the text.

already from Afrikaans al is used in various structures (Part II p. 11). See also 3. 2. 3, 4., p. 62.

He bought it three weeks ago [already] etc.

only (p. 325) becoming increasingly common colloquially, from Afrikaans maar as in 'Shame, he's only small' and probably from net used as ^opossibly redundant equivalent of 'really.'

He's only suave man (as an intensifier of an adjective) or
She's only looking pleased with herself (as adverb of degree modifying a verb).

so especially in the Substandard phrase so a little, 'so 'n bietjie' or in the phrase or so (see translated formulae¹¹(bb)^x).

again usually in the use 'that's something else again' (from Afrikaans weer = again. 'Dis weer iets anders.'

still probably translations from nog, tog, or even selfs.

'There's still a verandah before the garden starts.'

rather used redundantly in the phrase rather very, see translated structures 11 (t), and as a tail to a sentence usually signifying 'instead' which is probably characteristically, but not by any means exclusively South African. 'Let's go next week rather.' etc.

busy, see 1. below.

1. By Professor J. Smuts (personal communication).

3.2.3 Translated Structures

1. Busy: this is a redundancy of such frequency in South African English, that although it could be said to belong in 7 above, since it is a borrowed 'structure word' in translation from Afrikaans besig, it is pervasive enough to merit separate treatment as one of the most common of the translated structures.

The busy structures which appear regularly are, many of them clearly, carried over from Afrikaans in which the phrase besig om te does duty for the English -ing suffix or the Dutch -end(e) suffix in verb clusters with progressive aspect.

'The last time I saw you you were busy falling off a horse'
(Unpublished play).

It is noticeable that where in English the -ing form does duty for the participle in running water, the reading public; for the gerund running shorts, drinking glasses, reading glasses; and for what might possibly be termed a 'gerundive' from the implied passive in the case of drinking water, ¹ stewing steak and eating apples; Afrikaans distinguishes between the participial modifier in lopende water and the progressive form of the verb in which 'Hy was besig om te ...' where Dutch would use the -end suffix. I am told by Professor J. Smuts that in Dutch the 'hij was besig te ...' structure can be an alternative to the 'hij was ... end' depending on the verb.

Obviously busy with a verb cluster of progressive aspect

He tense + be + busy verb + ing He is/was busy — ing

will not always be redundant, but the redundancy has upon it semantic as well as syntactic restrictions:

Semantic restrictions as in

- (a) He was busy lying in bed. (newspaper report)
- (b) We're busy waiting for him now. (Radio S. Africa)

which are clearly ridiculous, or 'Syntactic' restrictions in which the sentence cannot be broken down into what are, for English, its component propositions: e. g.

- (c) I was busy drinking my gin (Port Elizabeth schoolmaster)
- (d) ... the accused was busy cutting Wynand's throat (newspaper report)

cannot be thought to consist of

- (c) S₁ I was busy
S₂ I was drinking my gin
- (d) S₁ The accused was busy
S₂ The accused was cutting Wynand's throat.

1. Also possibly reading matter (res legenda), that which is to be read etc.

On the other hand such sentences as

- (e) I'm busy cooking the dinner,
- (f) He's busy writing a paper,

where the intensifier very or too could be applied to busy, such semantic restrictions could not be said to apply.

- (e) S₁ I'm busy
S₂ I'm cooking the dinner
- (f) S₁ He's busy
S₂ He's writing a paper.

In cases like these (c) - (d) busy can be replaced by engaged upon, or in the act of, though in (c) and (d) it is fairly clearly redundant and in (e) and (f) it is not, though it could be regarded as unnecessary unless the intensifier were applied to it.

It is in this sense of engaged upon that the phrase busy with (Afrikaans besig met) appears as one of the translated formulae and not as a redundancy as in the foregoing structures.

2. Word order is sometimes influenced in the order of adverbials

She sits often there. (Pauline Smith).

Did he leave now home for to come here? (Telephonist).

3. Prepositions: Most of these are used as transliterations in their Afrikaans usage patterns or translations (most of which may be regarded as substandard in English).

after (na = for, after) He's longing after his beer.

by (by = at) I left my coat by the house. 'Working there by a chemist's ...' Darling, 25.6.75.

for (vir = of) I'm so nervous for these exams.

in (in = at) He's so bad in maths.

in (in = into) ... has come in the searchlight again (newspaper).

on (op = at) He's engaged on the moment.

on (op = for, in wag op) We're waiting on supplies now.

otherside (anderkant = on the other side of) The Post Office is otherside the High Street).

over (oor = about) He's so worried over his exams.

through (deur = across) She slapped him through the face.

under (onder = among) Under the plays you find volumes of poetry all mixed together.

with (preposition for adverb, mistranslation of saam = along, with) in Come with. Take me with.

with (deur = by) He was pricked with a thorn (for 'by a thorn').

4. Translated particles: of these already, (al/ye:) is perhaps the most important, and comparable with busy, since, just as busy signals progressive aspect in a verb cluster, al for Afrikaans, frequently rendered in English as 'already' signals the perfective aspect manifested as Tense + have + participle verb.

eg. He pres. + have + participle + Do it → He has done it, *which contrasts with the straight past tense*

He past + Do it → He did it

to show the 'current relevance' of the perfective aspect:

vs He has done it, now he can go and play.
He did it then he went to play.

In Afrikaans the contrast between these is normally signalled by al.

Hy het dit gedoen = He did it.

Hy het dit al gedoen = He has done it (already).

in which the al is occasionally repeated at the end of the sentence.

Al is used signifying both 'already' and 'yet'. In SAE yet appears very frequently in questions, linking this with the loss of aspectual have mentioned in the section on simplification of verb structures.

Thus 'Haven't you got it?' is rendered at times as 'Didn't you get it yet?' and 'Haven't you heard from him?' as 'Didn't you hear from him yet?'¹

There/daar - This prefix is probably classifiable as a pseudo-pronoun taking the place of this or it (Afrikaans dit) carried over from the Afrikaans structures in which the prefix daar becomes a 'pro-pronoun' by which

van dit → daarvan
vir dit → daarvoor
in dit → daarin etc.

There is a marked tendency in persons either bilingual or heavily influenced by Afrikaans to use a number of 'therein', 'thereat' and 'therefrom' structures which are in no way ungrammatical and which add at times a slightly archaic charm to their writing. An example cited in the text, however, cannot be regarded as either grammatical or stylistically pleasing.

Tree planting was encouraged and the Government offered prizes therefor in the territories ... Brookes History of Native Policy in S.A., 1924.

1. ...I'd of fired you already!"
And I didn't even get hired yet. Darling 3. 9. 75

still(nog, tog, selfs) to mean

- (a) further(nog) in terms of distance: There's still a garden between us and the street.
- (b) all the same, nevertheless (tog) He's still a good boy whatever they say.
- (c) even(selfs) I still told him not to but he didn't listen.

Other translated particles mentioned under Redundancies are rather(liewer(s)), again(weer) just(sommer, net)and only(maar, net) most of which are substandard usage in most contexts, as are yet, already and still discussed above.

5. A lack of number concord between the Verb and its Subject.

Afrikaans has no inflectional differentiation for number and person in the present tense, and in the speech and writing of persons influenced by this, a lack of number concord does often occur with plural subjects: the comedian's

'There are somebody here what ...'

does not, I think, occur in South African English but confusions of the following type have been observed.

There was you children (A Winter Vacation, D.A. C. MacLennan).
The plains is mostly mohair and wool. (Tailor, Cape Town).
Grapes being vegetable matter does not have ... (Student).
The make-up folks is getting hang of a snoep like everyone else these days, Darling 9. 7. 75.

See also 3.2.1 Short Cuts, 4. Omission of inflections for such examples of lack of concord.

He always come ^ when we don't expect him.
David drink ^ too much. etc.

which are of course classifiable as omissions.

6. Lack of number concord between Pronoun and Noun.

This is commonly heard even in educated speech and in some writing.

They are still making up their mind. (Professor, Wits)
We hope people will remember us in their will. (1820
Monument speech)
It doesn't matter if they get a few drops in their mouth.

[this type of structure can be compared with the Latin construction ex ore (not oribus) parvulorum].

It as proform for plural nouns is very common in South African English.

He bought two diamonds and put it in his pocket.

Have you seen my shoes? I think I forgot it at your house.

Here it is, the savings we promised you (Advt.)

This is probably related to the fact that Afrikaans distinguishes between

+ animate 'them' hulle and
- animate 'them' dit

Conversely, them is found as proform for singular nouns, usually in contexts where the speaker or writer wishes to avoid the 'him or her' locution, which cannot be said to be a particularly South African problem, but which nevertheless occurs.

When a person is stout you expect them to be heavy. (Student)

... to take someone and teach them (Student)

7. Lack of Gender Concord is found in the common affirmative that's him when the subject of discourse may be neuter (and even plural as at 6).

Q. That's the Gilbey brand isn't it? A. That's him.

Q. Is this the one you're wanting? A. That's him.

In contrast to Afrikaans dit used for - animate 'them', Afrikaans renders it as hy regardless of gender which results in the locution Dis hy, the equivalent of English That's it, or United States Right! This phrase could perhaps be better included in the formulae, but since the syntactic factor of gender is involved it is included here, as is the following.

8. Lack of Tense, Number and Gender Concord found in the use of the pro forma interrogative Is it? the translation of Afrikaans Is dit? meaning Is that so? or Really? This need not result in the syntactic jumble suggested by the heading if the noun is singular and the tense present.

A. It is going to rain. B. Is it?

If however the tense is past, the number plural, the gender masculine or feminine, and the person first or second, concord might be said to 'come unstuck' on a number of fronts:

A. He was here last night. B. Is it (Tense, gender)

A. 'I'm getting married, Bloss' Darling, June 1975). B. Is it? I croak (Person)

A. They left last week. B. Is it? (Tense, Number, gender) and so on.

This usage is very common among children and students, bypassing as it does in one convenient formula several of the niceties of grammar. It is also noticeable in the speech of some older persons influenced by contact with the young.

9. The Intrusive pronoun 'what': this has been discussed under redundancies, where it properly belongs, though as a translation of Afrikaans wat it must be mentioned here.

(a) It won't be as difficult as what you expect it to be.

This is a slightly different structure from the more frequent

(b) It's better than what I expected it to be.

in that the negative is used with as instead of the non-negative with than.

It is not easy to describe its syntactic function in either type of sentence apart from the bare fact of its total redundancy. It would however appear to be a quasi-relative pronoun in a type of apposition to the pronoun it. It could also be argued that the what would not be redundant in the second sentence if the phrase it to be were deleted: which is a further pointer to the notion of the two pronouns' being in apposition to each other.

10. Indefinite pronoun substitution.

The translated phrase a person from Afrikaans 'n mens (one) is in common use as a pseudo-pronoun used in either of two ways. The first is the conversion of the formal first or second person singular non-definite pronoun one to this noun phrase: the second is the replacement of the indefinite pronouns somebody/someone, anybody/anyone by the same.

These uses simplify numerous finer points of grammar for the dialect speaker.

The first use bypasses what is considered by many to be pedantic, namely to refer to oneself exclusively, or inclusively of one's company, as one. One, however is simplicity itself as regards possessive and reflexive forms. The speaker adopting a person usually has to recourse to the pronominal possessive and reflexive forms your and yourself as is usual in Afrikaans (regardless of the possible claims of my and myself for the first person.) One speaker however produced the following:

They must give a person three months - how can I get me all my stuff out by December 31st?

Resultant sentences of the first type are these which cannot be regarded as other than substandard.

Honestly a person doesn't know where to put your things in this place.
[one] [one's]

A person doesn't know what to do with yourself
[one] [oneself]

Ag, but it's a crying shame a person can't decide what they
 [one] [one]
 want to be like and get it done.
 [wants] Darling 9. 7. 75.

It offends a person's aesthetic sensibilities [Judgement: Newspaper
 [one's] report]
 He has no respect for a person's feelings.
 [one's]
 He won't listen to anything a person says. etc.
 [one]

The second type of use bypasses at times what are the complex morpho-
 syntactic* relationships between the prefixes any- and some- in a general
 ironing out of the differences under the blanket phrase a person.

Once a person has had a taste of a better life.... (Student)
 [someone]

It was impossible to look down upon a person such as Dr. Hastings
 [someone]

Banda. (Newspaper)

It was impossible to look down upon a person like him. (Student).
 [anyone/someone]

If you are ever handing a person a gun be sure ... (University Professor)
 [anyone]

When a person is fat you naturally expect them to be heavy (Student)
 [someone]

[*Children's speech shows this, but it is probably not a phenomenon
 particular to South African English.

Would you like some/any chocolate?
 I don't want some thanks. etc]

11. Translated 'formulae', difficult to classify, are numerous and most
 of those cited below I have felt to merit a place in the text of the dictionary:
 like much of the material, however, particularly the translated material,
 many of these may be regarded as 'vocabulary' items, though most do
 have some syntactic significance.

Verb formulae

(a) make a plan ('n plan maak) to arrange something, even a relatively
 trivial matter.

(b) pack in(inpak, om in te pak) to pack clothing, goods etc. and its
 obverse pack out (uitpak, om uit te pak) to unpack, also used
 intransitively 'I haven't packed out yet.' Both these phrasal verbs
 are used especially by children as the equivalent of 'burst out' with
 or without 'laughing'. Both phrases are used - viz. 'we packed in'
 and 'we packed out' (occasionally also 'packed up') with 'laughing'
 omitted but understood, unless the context implies the substandard usage
 'We arrived at our hotel and packed out (our suitcases).'

packing out parade, an army inspection of the spread-out belongings of
 the men.

(c) farm with (boer met) to farm. This phrasal verb, a direct trans-
 lation from Afrikaans, is found both in speech and in the press. The
 adoption of this apparently redundant preposition can possibly be accounted
 for by the fact that the English transitive verb farm, except in the form
 of the question What do you farm? to which the answer 'Sheep', 'Cattle',
 'Apples', 'Grapes', 'Fruit' can be simply given, has apparent restrictions
 on the objects it can take. 'I farm apples, sheep, mealies, beef, wine

grapes, deciduous fruit, citrus, game' are all perfect semantic possibilities unlike 'I farm taxicabs, omnibuses etc. Nevertheless in every case grow or raise would be a preferable verb, or the locution 'I am a sheep-, wine-, fruit-, citrus-, cattle-farmer/rancher less awkward than any of the 'I farm... 'possibilities. It is therefore not surprising that 'I farm with ... ' enjoys the currency that it does, filling the apparent vacuum between the verb and its direct object even though I farm with apples has a quaint ring to it and I farm with sheep a potential ambiguity. Further examples are cited at the entry farm with on p 126 of the draft dictionary.

(d) Excuse me (ekskuus) is found in South African English used as some of the equivalents of I beg your pardon namely 'I'm sorry I didn't hear' or 'I don't understand, would you repeat that?'^x etc. This usage sometimes baffles English speakers unaware of the difference between Afrikaans Ekskuus and Verskoon my.

(e) ride on water (water aanry) is a frequent locution among farmers in times of drought or in regularly dry areas, signifying conveying water from place to place, normally for stock not for irrigation (see lead water (f)). The locutions 'I must ride in feed' or ride mealies to the station' show further uses of the transliteration of Afrikaans ry meaning 'convey' or 'transport'. Two particularly interesting vocabulary items reflecting this are transport rider/riding and misrybol, a bulb flowering at the time when mis (manure) was being 'ridden on' to the vineyards and lands.

(f) lead water (water lei): this is found also in the form lead out water: the 'leading' signifies here allowing water to run usually through a network of irrigation furrows for purposes of cultivation of crops, unlike riding on water which is a drastic and laborious measure to keep stock alive.

(g) to wish you (omjou te gelukwens) is found used among South Africans without its direct object (see 3.2.1 Short Cuts) as in

'I'm going to be sure to come and wish you on your birthday'.

(h) to drink pills/tablets/medicine (pille/medisyne drink) is sometimes used instead of take or swallow, possibly because the usual form of take in Afrikaans, neem, is unlikely to pattern with pille or medisyne and the verb sluk (swallow) appears to be used very frequently in a metaphorical sense, from the examples cited in the Tweetalige Woordeboek (Bosman, van der Merwe and Hiemstra) and the Tweetalige Skoolwoordeboek (Bosman, van der Merwe and Barnes). It is perhaps therefore not surprising that the simpler drink has been carried over into English 'for medicinal purposes'.

I've actually developed gout at 23 but I've got some super pills I drink for it. (Graduate, bilingual)

It's such a nuisance to leave my office to drink the tablet every four hours. (Receptionist, Grahamstown)

(i) pick up weight (gewig optel) an expression substandard in Afrikaans meaning 'to gain weight' is heard in this translated form: possibly in contrast to 'drop in weight.'

I've picked up a lot of weight since my operation. (Priest)

(j) Doesn't/don't want to (wil nie): this phrase in South African English speech frequently does not carry the meaning of negative volition as in 'He doesn't want to go to rugby today.' Instead it is used with a non-animate subject signifying won't (will not) rather than is not willing to, which implies animacy in the subject.

The car doesn't want to start. (cf. metaphorical 'The car refused to start'. vs. 'The horse refused the jump.')

This door never wants to open.

My jeans don't want to come off.

This breach never want to close. etc.

(k) get¹ (kry) is used occasionally where have would occur in standard English.

Your dog wants her food, can she get it? (may she have it?)
[Sal sy dit kan kry?]

(l) let (laat) meaning cause to do or make is regularly heard in speech.

Let him do it - why should you?

Order and let the shop send the stuff.

I'm not going to give up work until the doctor lets me.
(totdat die dokter my dit laat doen Causes me to do so. Makes me).
(Pregnant typist).

It is noticeable that in Afrikaans laat is the common equivalent of make - 'Hy het my laat werk totdat ek moeg was'. He made me work until I was tired, which is similar to the Old English forlaetan, to cause to do; whereas let in the sense of permit or allow is frequently toelaat - 'Hy sal dit glad nie toelaat nie'. (He will certainly not allow it.)

Although laat is also regular especially in imperative structures.

Dink jy sal hy my (toelaat om) dorp toe te gaan?
Will he let me go to town, do you think?

(m) must (moet) is regularly found in South African English without the sense or meaning-factor, of obligation.² I am told by R. W. Burchfield, editor of the Oxford English Dictionary, that this use is also found in speech in England. In South African English it appears as a regular replacement for the interrogatives shall and should and the modals shall and should.³

When must I fetch you?	Shall
How many must I type?	Should
What must I tell him?	Shall
What must I do now?	Should/Should

You're jealous ... Must I tell you why? Fugard, Boesman and Lena.

1. This use is, I think, rare and has not been included in the text.
2. It occurs also in the translated form 'have to' as which it is usually redundant - 'And after all that we had to have a puncture'.
3. Anybody who can help identify the woman must phone Det/Sgt X at ... E. Province Herald, 22.10.75.

The contrast of intonationally stressed must (and should) may be noted here:

We must go tomorrow. (we have to whether we want to or not).
with

We should go tomorrow. (we ought to but may not manage it).

Afrikaans sal signifying future intention, and sou signifying obligation or intention should or would, or supposition, in 'Hy sou dit gedoen het', do not appear to occur as regularly, or in as simple structures as moet, a factor which does, I think, show its influence in the frequent use of must in the English of South Africans.¹

(n) Can't complain (kannie kla nie) is a reply heard to questions of the type 'How goes it?', 'How are you?', 'How is it with you?' signifying, 'fine', 'all right' etc.

(o) not so? (nie waar nie? nè?) is frequently employed as a tag question after the fashion of the German nicht wahr? or the Japanese soo desu nee? or simply nee? to invite the agreement of the listener, or feedback of some other kind. This usage, though it contains no actual verb, being an equivalent of isn't it? or isn't that so? can be classified roughly as a pseudo-verb. It appears to function exactly as does nè in Afrikaans, or nie waar nie? although it cannot be described as an exact translation or transliteration of either.

[play sport: this formula or verb phrase is ill-placed here since it cannot be pinpointed as a translated form. Since collecting data upon it as a piece of typical South African English for some time I have found that this is standard usage in Australia and have recently found it in the NOVA of February 1975 in an article on Jehovah's Witnesses:

'They play sport together; Brian plays tennis with Ron...'

This use strangely enough, though, is one of the few of which some South Africans appear to be conscious, rightly or wrongly, as something peculiar to their own dialect. (See quotation at play sport p.359 of the dictionary.)]

1. The following query was received from an informant in 1970 and is of interest in this connection I think: 'I wonder whether the use of 'must' instead of 'should', particularly in instructions issued by Government Departments, is a translation from Afrikaans. For instance: 'This form MUST be filled in'. 'Certified testimonials MUST accompany your application'. It seems to me that 'should' is the more 'English' word to use here. The use of 'must', especially by counter officials, seems peremptory, and, unfortunately, is gaining ground.'

Other

- (p) so long (solank) adverb of duration meaning 'in the meantime'
'Won't you sit down and wait so long? [Receptionist]
... He makes for the door. '... mind the shop so long
you hear?' Darling, 25.6.75.

This is a phrase like 'play sport' of which South Africans are often conscious and which can be heard used facetiously and inaccurately:

He's Cecil's pellie blue from back home so long (Ibid)
'We could extend the stoep-so-long' (Architect)

- (q) in place of (in plaas van) 'instead of' is found both in speech and writing:

Use mangoes in place of peaches.
In place of trousers they wore mutshas. etc.

[place (plek) meaning 'room' or 'space' also occurs.

Will there be place for him in the car?]

- (r) just now (netnou) 'in a little while': is used more frequently to indicate the immediate future,

'He'll be here just now',
'I'm coming just now',

than the immediate past

'I thought I heard your father snoring just now.' (A Winter Vacation, D. A. C. MacLennan),

or the immediate present, probably the standard English form, as in

'We have none in stock just now' [op die oomblik]

for which netnou would not be the Afrikaans equivalent.

The phrase just now is one which is regularly found by South Africans to be unintelligible to Americans and English to whom the possibility of future significance is quite bewildering.

- (s) now-now (nou-nou) this phrase signifies 'on the instant', 'now', 'immediately' in South African English. I have not as yet encountered in a past tense sentence comparable with 'Hy was nou-nou hier' in speech, though it does occur I think in Alan Paton's Cry, the Beloved Country.

'It was now, now that he left.'

- (t) rather very (bietjie baie): a substandard usage occurring in such contexts as

'It's rather very difficult' (Student)
'I've been rather very ill since last I wrote.' (letter)

[see also rather, Redundancies, 3.2.2]

(u) I'm telling you (ek sê vir jou) is frequently used in speech and in informal writing to emphasise the statement just made or about to follow.

'It was some party I'm telling you.'

'I'm telling you, I've never seen anything like it.'

[The phrase 'I promise you' is used similarly, but is not, I think, peculiar to South African English.]

(v) As true as God/Bob (so waar as ...) is used as the foregoing for emphasising the truth of an assertion and usually follows it in substandard speech or writing. The form 's true's Bob is frequent, presumably to avoid any suggestion of blasphemy. An Afrikaans alternative form is so waar's ek lewe - 'as true as I live'.

Then she threw her bible at me - 's true as God, she did.

A Winter Vacation, D.A.C. Maclennan.

I never would of schemed there was so many sick folks living there ... 's true's bob. Darling, 25.6.75

(w) Yes-no (Ja-nee) occurs even in educated speech (and in written dialogue) usually as an emphatic affirmative, or like No as a sentence initiator. It does not appear, as the literal meaning might indicate, to be used as a signal of doubt or hesitation, or as an equivalent of 'Well..!'

Yes-no she's fine now. (Housewife).

Yes-no rhenosterbos has never been a problem here thank goodness. (Farmer, Carlisle Bridge) etc.

(x) full of ... (vol.) covered with/in: this phrase has long been noted and was quoted by Pettman: 'a...mother scolds her offspring for "rolling on the floor and coming home full of mud"'.

It is heard regularly in speech but occurs in writing as well signifying normally covered with ..., covered in ... or all over ...: these examples are from the press (including letters)

The girl's back was full of red weals.

A dead cat lay on the pavement full of flies.

The dust bins are full of ants and I'm sure the men must often be full of ants also.¹

Frequent uses in speech include

'my hands/clothes are full of mud/blood/ink/dirt etc.'

1. When I arrived there, I saw the body of ... lying about eight metres from the house. He was full of blood. E. Province Herald 26.9.75.

(y) busy with (besig met): engaged upon, having, doing etc. This phrase, related to the redundant busy (see 3.2.3 Translations, 1.) indicates as it does in verb clusters some activity in progress.

He's busy with his thesis. (Student)

It's five o'clock. Yes, the wedding - they must be busy with it now. (Judge)

(z) on my/his/her nerves (op my, sy, haar senuwees): nervous, edgy, tense: substandard use. This does not imply that someone is getting on someone else's nerves but 'is on' his own. I think the phrase is substandard in Afrikaans

'Miss Jean is so op haar senuwees na daardie operasie'
(Coloured servant).

Magdalene's always complaining that she's 'on her nerfs' - now I'm 'on my nerfs' too. (Housewife).

(aa) -and-them (-hulle): and company, and family, et al. This phrase usually follows a proper name, and normally is used in the third person.

'My son-and-them are down at the sea.'

'When are Bill-and-them coming?

though it can be used as a third person address form in Afrikaans - 'Hoe laat moet ek Miss Jean-hulle hier verwag?' (Servant)

... otherwise my boet and them will die larfing
Blossom Broadbeam, Darling, 29.1.1975.

The phrase, as is the one which follows, is a convenient pronominal for a number of possibilities signifying the group, the family, and even occasionally a single person. 'Jan-and-them' could mean 'Jan and his wife.' This use, though I would suggest it is somewhat 'plat', has an interesting parallel in the Southern United States in which you-all is standard for more than one person addressed. Its use as a plural suffix the cow and them (cows) in the English of Jamaica is mentioned in the entry on p. 14 of the dictionary.

(bb) -or so (of so (iets)): or something of the sort or something like that etc. This is found in use in speech as a pseudo-pronoun and short cut for the meanings suggested here. It does not appear to have any equivalent of the English signal of approximation as in

'It's a hundred miles or so farther on'

nor does it appear to be related to the so (redundant in English) of

'We danced so a little'

which might be an equivalent of 'just'.

Let's stop and have a cup of coffee or so.

Surely an organisation like that must have some pamphlets or so that they can send people?

(cc) who-all (wie almal): this is used as a plural, + human interrogative¹ pronoun as in

Who all are coming this evening?

3.3 The Syntactic Categories and 'Translations'

3.3.1 Introductory Note

The material of Category 29, and the translations and transliterations of Category 10 are for convenience duplicated here, but with the lists numbered in series instead of being given the category numbers which appear in the dictionary, 29vb, 29adj etc.

Naturally, only relatively few of the items listed here may be described as part of 'dialect grammar' itself, though quite numerous syntactic deviances are represented in the first and the second lists, and in those of the 'function words' in lists 5 - 9. (3.3.5).

I say 'relatively few' because as far as possible all non-nouns in the overall word list for the dictionary have been assigned to a 'syntactic' category which means that all purely lexical verbs, adjectives and adverbs are included here.

(1) The translated structures or transliterated forms are listed together as the first of the tables below (3.3.2): those in the Detailed Categorisation to be found in Chapter IV, 4.2 are, being a mixed and heterogenous collection, placed in Category 10.

(2) Verbs and Verbal Phrases. This group (3.3.3) is perhaps that of the greatest interest and consists of verbs, verb phrases and a few pseudo-verbs: the fact that about one hundred and eighty fall into this group is an objective sign that South African English is not simply a set of 'names for things'. A relatively large number of verbs then may be taken as an indication that the South African element is more deeply entrenched than it would be in the case of a scattered 'top-dressing' of nouns and adjectives. Many of these verbs are of course borrowed, or borrowed in translation from Afrikaans or less frequently (call, sleep, borrow, stay well) from the African languages.

(3) Adjectives, Noun Modifiers and Group Modifiers (3.3.4) is also a fairly large group containing not only genuine adjectives, (namely those which will take degrees of comparison, -er and -est, or an

1. This is also found as a pronominal initiator of a noun clause 'He doesn't know who-all are coming'.

intensifier such as very) but also modifiers of other types. There are group modifiers like skiet-en-donder, off the veld, out-of-town, up country, nouns which modify other nouns such as Afrikaner, Cape Dutch, and participial modifiers like eaten out, unwisseled, clapped. Numerous nouns are, of course, used attributively as modifiers: this is usually indicated in the text.

There are, furthermore, modifiers in this group which are normally not free forms but which function as prefixes, frequently in the names of plants e.g. hotnots-, boesmans-, rooi-, or such items as voor- or agter-, (-skot, -slag, etc.)

All modifiers in the group are marked A (attributive) and P (predicative), some are both: thus with vrot A, P, as with 'rotten', there are two possible positions: one can say 'The apple is vrot' predicatively, or 'It's a vrot apple' attributively. On the other hand a man can, predicatively 'be platsak' but could hardly describe himself as 'a platsak ou': just as 'That man is well' is generally accepted, but 'a well man' is substandard. This coding therefore is a key to usage: e.g. we are unlikely to meet 'an off the veld ox', a battle which 'is play-play', an 'omgekrap auntie', a 'full of mud foot', or a fool who 'is blerry.' Naturally, as with standard English, many adjectives and other modifiers can work both ways.

(4) Adverbs(3.3.5) On account of the structure of Afrikaans in which adjectival and adverbial forms usually do not differ, some of the borrowed adjectives can be used adverbially in English and there is an overlap between this group and the preceding one. Most of these, as mentioned in the preceding section, can also be taken to be adjectival subject complements particularly with certain verbs: though for English they can usually be regarded as adverbs of manner, answering as they do the question, 'How?' e.g.

She's been going round haasbek/langbek/dikbek for months.

How has she been going round?

Haasbek/langbek/dikbek (viz. adverbs of manner)

cf.

She looks dikbek/langbek as usual (viz. adjective as subject complement).

Note: This structure for English can take either an adjective or a noun as subject complement.

She looks sulky.

She looks a mess.

There is, however, a further adverbial group, listed under

(5) Modal Adverbs and Intensifiers which includes what are still sometimes called 'adverbs of degree' which are used, not as true adverbs, that is modifying verbs, but as modifiers of adjectives or other adverbs.

(6) Pronouns and Pseudo-pronouns. This small group comprises both genuine and pseudo-pronouns. They have in common with the exception of the prefix there- that they are used instead of the indefinite pronouns 'someone', 'somebody', etc. or in the case of niks, peanuts and zut of 'very little' or 'nothing.' The avoidance of direct second-person pronouns by many South Africans is discussed in the text at the entry headed third person form of address.

(7) Prepositions. These are all English prepositions or prepositional phrases used in ways which are non-standard English, carried over from Afrikaans, e. g. by (from Afrikaans by) = at or beside; under (from Afrikaans onder) = among; over (from Afrikaans oor) = about etc. The phrases e. g. 'on the moment', 'I'm on my nerves', 'use X in place of Y', 'she smacked him through the face' are all translations or transliterations of Afrikaans structures and are mostly found in sub-standard usage. The -out of the combinations beaten-, eaten-, tramped- and shot out is translated from the Afrikaans prefix uit-.

(8) Redundancies listed here are, most of them, discussed in the text as separate entries and in the entry headed redundancies.

(9) Omissions are treated as a whole in the omissions entry in text with certain cross references to other items.

3.3.2

1. Translations or transliterations

adjective with infinitive	come to hand	forget
all two	come/came there	full of
already	catch	give
-and-them	deadstill	goodie
bad friends	doesn't want to	* go well
bite one's teeth	drink	have to
* borrow	excuse me	hell in, the
busy	family	hellout
busy with	far	him, that's
can't complain	farm, the	Holland
come right	for	hope so, don't

howl	play-play	them, and-
is it?	propped	there-
isn't it?	rather	thing, my
	rather very	third person (oblique)
joking, you're	ride	address
just now	ride flat	through the face
lend	road, in the	throw
make a plan	road, out of the	throw dead
must	scandal	throw wet
negative, uses of	scare	throw with
nerves	shine through	tiger's milk
on my/your etc.	show through	tramp
works on my/	small little	tramped, to get
your etc.	so a little	true as God, as
never	so, or	wait on
no	so long	want to
not so	so size	don't want to
now	splinter new	doesn't want to
now-now	standpoint	-water
old fashioned	* stay well	sugar water
Old Year's Night	stick	jelly water etc.
only	stick away	wish you, to
on the moment	stick fast	with
otherside	stick on	come with
otherwise	still	go with
pack in	sweet	* worry
pick out	takes me up to	youth, the
pick up weight	take out	
place	telling you, I'm	
place of, in	thank you	
plan, to make a		

* From African languages.

3.3.3

2. Verbs and verbal phrases

abba	boeke vat	brom
ask	bog	bry
assega(a)i	bore	bundu-bash
bake	[A.E.] borrow	[A.E.] call
baklei	braai	came/come there
ban	braak	camp
becreep	bray, brei, brey	can't complain
bell	brei riems	classify
bite one's teeth	bring op skoot	reclassify

come to hand	kuier	row
commandeer	kurvey	ru(c)k
complain, can't	laager	ruk,
cotch	lead water	run (veld)
cut	learn	sala kahle
deproclaim	lend	scandal
divorce	let	scare
doesn't/don't want to	loer	schlenter
donder	loop	scoff
don't hope so	mooi loop	scoffle/skoffel
drag	maak gou	shambok
drink (pills, medicine)	make	shine through
dwaal	make a plan	shoot out
excuse me	moan	show through
fall pregnant	moera	sit up
farm with	mooi loop	sjambok
forget	must	skei
give	[nè]	skel
go black	neuk	skinder
goef	[never]	skit/skut
go garshly	[not so]	skop
gooi	off load	skop lawaai
go well	off saddle	skrik
hamba	opsaal	slag
hamba kahle	op skoot, to bring	slat
handle off	outspan	sleep, 1 and 2
hap	pack in 1 and 2	[A.E.] sleep
have	pack out, 1 and 2	sluk
have to	pick out	smaak
him, that's	pick up weight	smear
hope so, don't	plak	smell out
hou	plan, make a	smoor
howl	play	smouse
hunt	play sport	snik
inspan	play white	sny, 1 and 2
is it?	prop	span, in
isn't it?	pronk	span, out
jaag	reclassify	spog
joking, you're	release	spoor
jol	rest	sport, play
klap	ride	stay
kneehalter	ride in	stay well
kotch	ride flat	steek
kraal	ride on water	stick
		stick away

stick fast	throw bones	waai
stick on	toor	wait on
stokkiesdraai, play	tramp	want to /doesn't want to
stokvel, play	trek	wash spears
sukkel	try for white	water, ride on
take out	upsaddle	wish you, to
takes me up to ...	vasbyt	with, throw
telling you, I'm	vastrap	woel
thank you	verneuk	work on his/your/ my nerves
throw	voorloop	worry
throw dead	vrek	zoll
throw wet	vroetel	zone
throw with	vry	

[-] pseudo verbs
[A. E.] usually African English

3.3.4

3. Adjectives, Noun Modifiers and Group Modifiers

adjective with	Cape Dutch A, P	Kaapse Hollands P
infinitive P	clapped P	kragdadig(e) A, P
* Africa, for	cronky A, P	kroes(ie) A, P
Afrikaans, A, P.	deadstill P [adv. m]	langbek P [adv. m]
Afrikaner A	deurmekaar P	moeg P
agter A	dik A, P	mooi A, P
bang A, P	dikbek P	multi-national A, P
beaten out A, P	dom A, P	mush A, P
beneek(te) A, P	Dutch A, P	naar P
best A	egte A	oes P
binne A	far A	off-colour A, P
blou, blaauw A	fies P	old fashioned A, P
bleddy A	* for Africa	omgekrap P
blerry A	fris A, P	otherwise P
blind A, P	full of ... P	ou A
blink A	haasbek P [adv. m.]	out-of-town A
boere- A	herstigte A	overmass P
boesmans- A	holbol A	pap A, P
bont A, P	hotnots- A	papnat P
bos- A.	hunted out A, P	parmantig A, P
botter- A	improved A, P	[adv. m]
brak A, P	jags A, P	plat A, P
brede A	kaal A, P [adv. m]	platsak P
busy (with) P	kaalgat ^(A) P [adv. m]	
	Kaalvoet A.P. [adv. m.]	

play-play A	snide A	vaal- A
poegaai P	snyde A	vatterig P
raw A, P	snoep P	veld, off the P
red 1 A, P	snot-en-trane A, P	[adv. place]
red 2 A, P	so size P	veld A
red 3 A	sour A, P	veld-reared A, P
right, not P	splinter new A, P	verdomde A
salted A, P	steeks P (A)	verkramp P
schimmel/skimmel A	stomp(-) A, P	verkramppte A
scurvy A	suur- A	verlep P
shu-shu A, P	swak P, A	verlig P
skeef P[adv. m]	sweet A, P	verligte A
skeeloog P	taai A, P	vies P
skelm A, P [adv. m]	tagati P	voëlvry P
skiet-en-donder A	tamaai A	volksvreemde A
skop- skiet-en-	thick A, P	voor- A
donder A	toe P	vrot A, P
skut A	too good P	wait-a-bit A
slap A, P	tramped out A	ware A
slapgat P	tweetalig P	warm A, P
slim A, P	unwisseled P, A	wissel A
slyt A	up country A	woes P, A
snaaks A, P		yl A, P

A = Attributive

P = Predicative

[adv. m] = also used as adverbials of manner

- A hyphen signifies noun modifier or adjective usually found in a prefix,
e. g. bos-

* Post-modifier

3.3.5 Other

4. Adverbs usually found primarily as adjectives in SAE, but used occasionally as modifiers of verbs.

deadstill [adv. m]	kaalgat [adv. m]	skeef [adv. m]
dikbek [adv. m]	langbek [adv. m]	skelm [adv. m]
haasbek [adv. m.]	off the veld [adv. pl.]	^x up country [adv. pl.]
kaal [adv. m]	parmantig [adv. m]	[^x so long [adv. of duration]]

5. Modal Adverbs and Intensifiers

again	moerava	so a little
already	mos	
binne	never	
darem	now	sommer
doer	now-now	still
hellout	rather	there
helluva	rather very	yet
maar	so	

6. Pronouns and pseudo-pronouns

alles-	niks	there-
all two	or so	third person form
-and them	peanuts	of address
baie	a person	who-all
mekaar	pronouns, omission of	zut

7. Prepositions and Prepositional Phrases

after		
by	off the veld	through
for	on ... nerves	through (the
in	on the moment	face)
in place of	otherside	under
in the/out of the	out	with
road	over	

8. Redundancies

a	little	small/little
again	maar	so
already	mos	(yellow) jaundice
article, a, the, an	negative	sommer
busy	now	still
but	now-now	what
darem	no	yet
finished and	(sugar)diabetes	(horse) riding
(klaar)	only	
have to	rather	

9. Omissions

articles	prepositions/	're
-ed	particles	third person sing.
possessive suffix	pronoun/noun	vb inflection

[Suffixes]

-goed	-heid	-ie
-------	-------	-----

[Prefix]

there-

CHAPTER IV

The Treatment of Dialect Vocabulary

4.1 Introduction; the taxonomic approach; problems of inclusion

The primary terrain of any lexicographer is of course the vocabulary, though I hope the text will show that far more than vocabulary must and does concern the maker of a dialect Dictionary.

Dialect vocabulary itself, being only part of the usage of the individual,¹ to whichever English speech community he belongs, requires different treatment from that used for a whole language.

The primary problem involved is what to include in the word list. For this text the word list was prepared gradually over a period of two and a half years and on what might be called a taxonomic basis of categorisation into experiential fields. During the writing up of these in the succeeding two years many more items have been added to the initial word list.

The notion of classification into categories each covering some aspect of human life and experience was originally adopted for a pilot experiment which was not ever put to the test, largely because it would have involved large groups of school children, and school teachers are notoriously unsympathetic to dialect usage. This abortive experiment was designed with a view to establishing something like a Basic SAE Vocabulary of say, three hundred and fifty items known to, if not actually used by, a large majority of the subjects consulted. As a basis for selection of items for scrutiny, certain categories, Food, Drink, Birds, Beasts, Clothes, Houses, etc. of a simple everyday nature were drawn up, and words added to each at random as a suitable item for inclusion was encountered in reading or conversation. When the scheme for carrying out this experiment was abandoned, a small but highly viable nuclear word list remained and the idea of expanding this to form the lexicon of a categorised dictionary was born.²

Obviously the lexicographer mad enough to abandon the alphabet in favour of categories as a listing procedure deserves to be disregarded

1. This is discussed in Chapter I, 1.1
2. The full categorisation scheme appears at 4.2, pp. 90-189.

as a crank, as without knowledge of the category into which a desired word falls no reader would be able to use such a text. The categories then are inevitably an 'extra', not a substitution for the tried and true if arbitrary method of alphabetisation. An index of the type used by Roget in his Thesaurus would, to a certain extent, make a categorised text workable, but it would have long ceased to be a dictionary in any of the familiar senses of the word.

Categorisation as a means of treating and of selection of dialect vocabulary has several decided advantages for the lexicographer, in that it provides almost made-to-measure answers to the captious critic who declares all dialect vocabulary is 'slang', and to the inevitable problem of what to include. These points are discussed in Chapter I, 1.1 to 1.4.

The criticism that any dictionary of SAE is nothing but a dictionary of 'slang' has all too often been levelled at the Dictionary of SAE project as a whole, and erroneous and short-sighted as the view is, it is exceedingly prevalent, and to have a counter argument to it is most desirable. This is provided by categorisation. The categories into which this vocabulary is divided are most of them far removed from slang. Apart from this aspect, categorisation is a useful and established method of treating vocabulary, though not, of course, lexicographically. In his study The English Word¹, a Russian-published textbook in lexicology, I. V. Arnold describes '... the well-known thematic subgroups, such as terms of kinship, names for parts of the human body, colour terms, military terms and so on' and further that 'The basis of grouping ... is not only linguistic but extra-linguistic: the words are associated because the things they name occur together and are closely connected in reality. It has been found that these words constitute quite definitely articulated spheres held together by differences, oppositions and distinctive values.'¹ The detailed index of fields covered by the individual categories accompanies the notes on them at 4.2 and only the main headings and numbers follow here. (1) Address, Modes of, (2) African World, African language items and other African terms, uses or customs, (3) Birds (not domestic), (4) Church and State, (4a) The Church, (4b) The State: Politics, Law and Government, (5) Clothing and Footwear, (6) 'Creatures' (Wild Animals, Reptiles etc.), (7) Dishes and Cookery, (8) Drinking and Smoking, (9) Exclamations and Interjections, (10) Expressions, Idioms and Slang, (11) Farming and Domestic Animals, (12) 'Fish', (13) Flowers, (14) Fruits and Vegetables, (15) Games, Dances and Diversions,

1. I. V. Arnold, The English Word, Moscow 1966, 1973 edit.

(16) Health, Moods, Medicine and Witchcraft, (17) Historical Administration, (18) House and Garden, Building and Buildings, (19) Human Types, Family, People, (20) Hunting, Weapons and War, (21) 'Insects', (22) Landscape, Place and Topography, (23) Languages, Peoples and Tribes, (24) Monetary Units and Measures, (25) Oriental South Africa, (26) Pioneering and Settlement, (27) Place Names (formatives), (28) Plants, (29) Syntactic Categories, (30) Trade, Mining and Law, (31) Travel and Vehicles, (32) Trees and Shrubs, (33) Weather, (34) Writing, Education and the Arts.

It can be seen from these that the SAE vocabulary is spread over many and various fields of human experience, in which naturally many colloquial items, in the strict sense, occur. Since dialect exists more markedly in speech than in writing, this is only to be expected. To dismiss all colloquial usage as slang is both invidious and incorrect. However, attempting a hard and fast definition of one's own terms of reference in this respect leads one on to dangerous ground since no line can be drawn through that territory in which the colloquial shades off into slang.

Two categories, (10) and most of (9), carry the label 'Colloquial' and many items perhaps, 'Slang', though these two areas of usage inevitably overlap even when the terms are applied as objectively as possible. Many items from other categories are marked 'Colloquial', defined in the labelling system of this text as 'informal in speech or writing', but few actually carry the label 'Slang'. Many categories contain no colloquial items: these include the names of flora and fauna, landscape and topography and the very numerous place-name formatives, treated in more detail elsewhere (Chapter IV, 4.4).

It is to be hoped that the categorised listing of the vocabulary, preceding the main body of the entries, will demonstrate the broad application of the SAE vocabulary, without undue labouring of the point that dialect is not slang.

Consideration of the important problem of what to include in such a dictionary shows the advantages of the categorisation system even more clearly.

One reason for continuing with the categories after the making of the original experimental word list was the question of the proportions of items of different kinds. Examination of other dialect dictionaries, one by a detailed counting procedure, others by a more

random sampling, showed two features which the categorisation system has helped to obviate or mitigate. Firstly, a heavy proportion of dialect vocabulary is apt to consist of names for things: in the text of Part II, however, the section labelled throughout, 29 (Syntactic Categories), the only non-semantic classification, shows the other word classes, marking all non-nouns according to their syntactic function. Secondly, particularly in the Australian and New Zealand supplement to the Pocket Oxford Dictionary, the number of names of flora and fauna, 619 of nearly 1700 items, 36.4%, is overwhelming in proportion to the remaining vocabulary. Accordingly, categories (3) Birds, (6) Creatures, (12) 'Fish', (13) Flowers, (28) Plants and (32) Trees and Shrubs have been deliberately kept as small as possible in this text. Numerous standard biological works treat the flora and fauna of South Africa in great and informed detail, invariably including the local or vernacular names, often in separate indexes. I cannot feel, therefore, that the lexicographer's terms of reference embrace the writing of a biological glossary, treating, of necessity, with great brevity, what is fully and better dealt with elsewhere. These items therefore are numerically restricted, and confined as far as possible to items encountered in everyday life, or in non-specialist texts. For purposes of this experimental dictionary they may be regarded as the peripheral or 'randwoordeskat' in relation to the more solid core of terms making up the 'kernwoordeskat' and the extended 'uitgebreide kernwoordeskat' described by L. C. Eksteen.¹

Another problem is that of the number of African language borrowings to be included as these could be, if the field of anthropology were much drawn upon, extremely numerous. Of the nearly 1700 items in the Australian and New Zealand Supplement already mentioned, 234 items are classifiable as 'Abo' (Aboriginal), that is 14% of the whole. Many of these aboriginal words are names in the 619 (36.4%) items of flora and fauna. There is, of course, a similar tendency in SAE: flora and fauna do frequently have vernacular names. The question of the proportion of such words in SAE, is, however, a minor one compared with the Australian, as SAE draws primarily upon Afrikaans and not on the African languages. It is likely therefore that the percentage of indigenous language borrowings will be far lower, overall for SAE. In the experimental dictionary of Part II there are about 200 words of African language origin, approximately 6.25% of the estimated total of 3250.²

1. L. C. Eksteen Die Leksikologie van Afrikaans, Taalfasette 9, 1969

2. This is mentioned in Chapter I, 1.5.

A primary problem of inclusion also touched upon in the introduction and in the section on labelling is that of the 'bad' words which recent lexicographical practice in the Heritage Dictionaries¹ includes, labelled 'Vulgar' for the meaning, and 'Vulgar Slang' for any extension of meaning. Their inclusion excited criticism in a recent review² of the new Heritage Dictionary of the English Language (1973) and one hesitates to contemplate what Dr Johnson's reactions to such practices would have been, in the light of his remarks of over two hundred years ago: 'Barbarous or impure words and expressions, may be branded with some note of infamy, as they are carefully to be eradicated wherever they are found; and they occur too frequently in the best writers'.³ The recent Grobbelaar Commission's expert upon matters lexicographical expressed himself in favour of the non-exclusion of those 'bad' words which occur as part of SAE. Those included in the text are gat, which has an independent existence as a place name formative, moer as a term of abuse and in the childish compound intensifier 'a moer of a good kick' (apart from its botanical sense), kak as a noun, a modifier and an expletive, pram- as a place name formative and lastly with some misgivings poes. This inclusion is to enter a caveat for the benefit of the British visitor or settler, usually a woman, whose habit is to repeat loudly 'Puss Puss Puss' when calling a cat, a practice I have seen excite both ridicule and horror in South Africans, and in servants in this country. The entry therefore takes the form: poes [pʊs] n; Unacct. Slang. The female genitals: see puss.
and
puss [pʊs] n; Obj. in SAE: see poes.

While I should personally prefer to exclude this particular obscenity there is a practical issue involved, and I feel it would be poor hospitality to the stranger, for whom much of this text is designed, not to give an indication of what can unwittingly make him, or her, appear ridiculous.

On the surface, at any rate to people used to the English style of lexicography rather than the different, somewhat encyclopaedic, approach of American lexicographers, the inclusion of place names may seem most unorthodox. I am always surprised and disapproving

1. The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language and the Heritage Dictionary of the English Language.

2. Evening Post Magazine Section 3rd November 1973, p. 12.

3. Samuel Johnson A Plan of a Dictionary of the English Language, 1747.

myself when I encounter the names, populations and whereabouts of specific places in the body of a dictionary where I feel that they have no rightful place.

South African place names, however, are a challenge for the SAE lexicographer since they break up into meaningful units or formatives which occur repeatedly in different combinations and which are to most strangers and even sometimes to South Africans themselves quite incomprehensible. While these formatives cannot, many of them, be regarded as dialect in the strict sense, there is a very good case for their inclusion as formatives only, not as proper names, in the body of a dictionary of SAE (see 4.4). Firstly, with the stranger or traveller in mind it seems desirable that this handbook should contain the wherewithal to interpret a fair number of the place names he may encounter: secondly, many of these formatives constitute dictionary items in themselves, particularly those topographical terms such as veld, vlei, kloof, krans, poort and drift which have an existence in the dialect quite independent of their onomastic function.

Apart from these two factors, South African place names are apt to follow the old patterns and the relatively recent names as Verwoerdburg, Randburg, Roodepoort, Bosberg and even Welgemoedboven illustrate this. One can therefore conclude that the old formatives retain their productivity, and that these varying elements are likely to have future as well as past and present use in the construction of names, as new settlements, suburbs, townships or mines are built or opened up.

Their inclusion in the body of the text, while being treated as a separate category, listed with a reference number of their own (27 a-1), will enable any interested reader to examine the place name material as a subject in itself, whereas it will not obtrude upon the attention of the user to whom this material is of marginal or no interest, which it might if it were treated as a separate section either prefatory or appended.

Most of these place name formatives are fairly high frequency items apart from such items as pram- and -twist- each of which has only two occurrences which I can trace. The inclusion in very many cases, not only of the nouns I have designated +topographical¹ (veld,

1. 4.2 Category 27a.

vlei, drift, berg, krans etc.) but also of the names of plants, trees, birds, animals and fish, dovetails with the independent entry of an item of flora or fauna (waboom, suikerbos, kiepersol, maroelaboom, malgas, loerie, kabeljou, bosbok, das(sie)). This gives a number of entries with double significations, particularly interesting for such a text. On the other hand there are many of these terms from the flora, fauna and topography of South Africa which have no right there other than by virtue of their being place name formatives, such as bron, kuil, gans, leeu, rob(ben), olifant, since they cannot be regarded as current in SAE. The same is true of the verbs, verb participles, some of the adjectives, and of course the articles.

Several of the place name formatives as I have said cannot be regarded as other than very low frequency items, and the same is true of many examples in the overall word list. In the question 'Why include such a rare word as X?' there is, I feel, an important principle of lexicography at stake, namely that it is usually for the unusual item that any dictionary is consulted. A native speaker of English is unlikely to look up a word like 'house', 'grass' or 'soap', but he is very likely to want to check on 'taxonomy', 'eleemosynary' or 'argot', and the lexicographer who omits such items on account of their rarity is disregarding or avoiding part of his primary duty to his readers, that is to elucidate what they do not know rather than what they do.

It is therefore, without apology that some rare historical or legal terms are included, some African items which are part of the argot of Drum magazine journalism, or odd items of usage heard among Eastern Cape farmers. Rare beasts, however, such as the 'kommetjegatkat', although he appears in the work of some early travellers, have no real place in this text, and the same is true of plants and flowers for the reasons outlined earlier in this section.

Other items, such as obsolete measures or institutions, monetary units or offices still found in South African texts, old and more recent, are clearly marked as historical (Hist.), but nevertheless hold a most important place in the lexicon.

The dialect dictionary is, I feel, no exception to the rule that the rare items merit inclusion. Particularly to the South African reader the rare items are likely to be those that are of interest. Run-of-the-mill items of his everyday vocabulary are scarcely likely to interest him, whereas more unusual or historical items should - unless

he has a thirst for etymologies 'What on earth can be the origin of a word like voetstoots or even tronk?' - or for facts 'how many inches in a Cape foot?' (now, alas, centimetres) or a personal interest in place names, which can have an endless fascination, particularly for people travelling by car.

From the early stages of making the daily growing word list, experimental patterns of entry were made, again posing the 'how much?' or 'how little?' question about the information or detail to be included. In a so-designated 'Compact' dictionary there is, regrettably, no room for historical material to back up the definition, though in this one illustrative contexts which add so much to the meaning of a word by showing it in use are included. For the reason that this material is limited, actual definition requires extra care and, where possible, extra detail without undue wordiness. But, as a general rule for lexicography of this kind, I would submit that the definition itself should be fuller than that of an item treated on historical principles, where a full-scale spread of illustrative contexts can be given.

The pattern of entries

There are, obviously, certain indispensable items of information which must be in any dictionary entry.

There is, firstly, the spelling (or spellings) of the item. (The only purpose of many persons in using ordinary dictionaries seems to be to ascertain correct spellings). Secondly, the pronunciation, treated in detail in Chapter II, must be included in as simple and workable a form as possible, particularly in a dictionary of a dialect containing as many borrowed non-English words and sounds as does SAE. Thirdly, the word class or grammatical function of the word is also a sine qua non, and if the word has functions both as noun and verb, or as adjective and adverb, this must be made as clear and explicit as possible. The topic of the grammatical significations is touched upon in Chapter I and in the section on labelling, as it is necessary to modernise the general concept of the so-called parts of speech¹ (pars orationis) to avoid obsolete forms of syntactic description, or those which should be obsolete but regrettably are not. A case in point is the tendency to call anything and everything an adjective through want of better terminology, e. g. the dem. adj. (Shorter Oxford English Dictionary), some adj. (American Heritage

1. As far as possible the clearer term 'word classes' in line with the Afrikaans woordsoorte is used in the text.

Dictionary). The designations used in the experimental dictionary are listed at Sections IA and IB of the tables at the end of 4.3 (4.3.1). Lastly, of course, there is the meaning, the item of primary importance to most dictionary users. For the text the significations of the words have been defined as clearly as possible, not sacrificing clarity to excessive brevity, and extra information of interest or significance is given bracketed. The amount of work involved for individual definitions differs considerably: one may give no trouble while another may require consultation of numerous reference works.

The same may be said of the etymologies, given in this text but omitted by many dictionaries and often dealt with in separate texts such as Afrikaanse Etimologieë of Boshoff and Nienaber or the Oxford Dictionary of Etymology.

In many cases etymologies given are tentative or unknown, marked either dub. for doubtful or 'unknown', whichever is the more appropriate, and prob. (probably) or poss. (possibly) for one which seems shaky. Various sources have been used for the etymologies given in the experimental dictionary, and, naturally, personal theories in tricky cases like beast, Dopper or sosaties have been aired. In the text of Part II all etymologies, in accordance with the wishes of the publisher, are placed last and below each entry.

A usage or status label has as far as possible been given where this is applicable or desirable. These labels are discussed at 4.3 and listed at 4.3.1. Also, wherever possible or available there is a cross reference or references to comparable items or usages in other English dialects: thus (u)mlungu is followed by cf. U.S. whitey, and poor white followed by cf. U.S. red neck, white trash, Jam. E. (Jamaican English) white jeg, and so on. These cross references are not as numerous as I could wish, though this part of the work has proved a particularly interesting and fruitful field. It is discussed in section 4.3 on account of the set of labels introduced for this purpose, and as a topic in its own right in section 4.5

Where possible illustrative quotations are given with each entry: these are discussed in the introductory note to the Bibliography.

Note: A full sample entry, putu, is given at the end of the brief introduction to Part II.

4.2 The Detailed Categorisation of the Vocabulary

This section appears here in the form in which it has been prepared for the experimental dictionary^x where it should follow the introduction, its index preceding not following the categorised material. Each of the thirty-four categories is presented as a word list preceded by a note on its contents. In certain larger, less homogeneous categories, 2 African World, 4 Church and State, 16 Health, Moods, Medicine and Witchcraft and 18 House and Garden, Building and Buildings, the material is divided into smaller lexical or experiential sets, followed in each case by a full, alphabetised word list. In only one case has this proved impracticable namely 11 Farming and Domestic Animals, which contains over four hundred items (about 12.5% of the total). These are set out as larger groups: Stock farming which includes types and breeds of domestic animals and birds, with a sub-section on animal diseases; Veld, Fodder, Pastures and Grazing with a sub-section on plant pests, followed by smaller sections on Buildings and Fencing, Agriculture, Crops and Payment, Water, Pests, Plant Diseases and lastly People. To make, finally, in addition to these, a full alphabetised list seemed desirable in the interests of general uniformity in the section, but unjustifiable, I think, in the light of the number of terms and the amount of space involved.

It should perhaps be added here that the original word list for the dictionary was put together by means of the categories, and only afterwards alphabetised so that the systematic writing of entries could be accomplished in order; that is, that the alphabetisation of the material was secondary to the categorisation in the conception of the text as a whole.

Note:

There are no consistent spelling rules observable for the compounding of words in SAE as there are in Afrikaans, though usually if one item is Afrikaans and one English such as trek ox or rooibos tea (cf. rooibostee) they are separated or hyphenated. Even this is not a dependable rule of thumb, however, as outspan and kaffirboom show: and the English tendency to maintain separation is not followed in camelthorn and dryland. These do of course appear as camel('s) thorn and dry land, and lack of consistency in the written data therefore may well be reflected in the word lists which follow and in the draft dictionary, in spite of conscious efforts to maintain a degree of uniformity within items.

THE CATEGORISED SURVEY OF THE VOCABULARY

Introductory Note

The idea of categorising the vocabulary was born of two things. The first was an abortive attempt at making a representative list of 350 items of South African English for use as a text with selected groups to ascertain how widely known these apparently 'basic' items actually are. This test has yet to be made. The second was the conviction of everyone to whom I spoke that I was making a Dictionary of slang. From this came the necessity to prove that I was doing nothing of the sort. The rough categories, previously regarded as representative groups from which to work out a linguistic test, were re-worked in a serious attempt to show how many aspects of life are pervaded by South African English far removed from slang. The categories grew to thirty-four in number, each covering what might be called an 'experiential' field, only two of which (9 and 10) deal specifically with colloquialisms.

Many areas of basic human experience - food, clothing, furniture, houses, cookery, schooling, Church, politics, trade, travelling, the cultivation of the soil, the weather, as well as the birds, beasts and plant life of this country and of course its history - are all pervaded by words and phrases unlikely to be known or understood anywhere else in the world. Many of these, of course, are names for things peculiar to South Africa. Many others are South African expressions for things common to many speech communities, most of which are not 'slang' at all. It is with the intention of showing the scope and number of these fields of experience that these categories have been prepared, and in the hope that the mosaic they form will give a clearer picture of English as a whole in South Africa.

An actual Categorised Dictionary involving the combination of categories and explanatory material is one which cannot be made unless the dictionary is done twice over: once arranged alphabetically with all the data relative to each item, and again with the same material arranged in categories. This would clearly be ineligible in terms of waste and expense, so a compromise has been attempted here. The explanatory, alphabetised body of the dictionary follows the categorised word lists.

Most people are accustomed to 'looking up' a word in Roget's Thesaurus of the English Language, a process which simply involves putting the categorisation principle to work. A limited subject index to the categories is provided here to assist in the business of finding that body of vocabulary relevant to a particular subject.

The thirty-four categories into which the vocabulary is divided are preceded by this subject index, thus a reader interested in animals will be directed to 6 Creatures, in the case of wild animals, or to 11 Farming and Domestic Animals; another interested in gardening will be directed to 18 House and Garden, Building and Buildings, 13 Flowers, 28 Plants, 32 Trees and Shrubs. Each category takes the form of a word list preceded by a short account of what is in it, usually with examples of words of each kind. Categories which cover very broad fields are, for convenience, divided into short word lists under which the terms which belong together are grouped. Thus 18 House and Garden, Building and Buildings, is subdivided into Houses with sections on furniture, kitchen equipment, gardens, cellar etc.; Timber, the names of indigenous woods; Outbuildings and Other Outdoor Structures covering sections on fencing, outhouses, dwellings; Land, Building Construction and Tools containing builders' words, tools, floor types; and Church and Other Public Buildings. The largest category of all, Farming and Domestic Animals is also subdivided into Stock Farming with Animal Diseases as a sub-section Veld and Grazing, Cultivation and Soil Types etc. in an attempt to group what is an unmanageably large number of closely or distantly related terms.

It must be added here that there are many words which fit into more than one of the categories so that there is inevitable overlap between some of them e. g. 31 Travel and Vehicles, much of which deals with wagon travel, and 26 Pioneering and Settlement in which the ox wagon bulks largely. In the event of such overlap a word may have more than one number preceding its definition¹ to indicate that it belongs in several groups e. g. diesselboom 31, 26, 11. Furthermore if the word is not a noun this will be indicated by a number showing the syntactic category or word class to which it belongs e. g. inspan 31, 26, 29vb, or brak 11, 29adj.

Every effort has been made to make this a simple and workable system. For identification of category numbers in the text a 'ready reference' table of the categories 1 to 34 is provided.

NOTE: Certain words appear in the lists bracketed, and similarly numbers preceding entries may be in parentheses. Unless there is a footnote explaining why this has been done, the brackets (or parentheses) indicate that the particular word has been included in that category with certain reservations either as a rarity or else as being peripheral to it.

1. A description of the form of the entries will be found at the end of the introduction to Part II with a sample entry putu.

'READY REFERENCE TABLE'
to Categories and their numbers

1. Modes of Address
2. African World
3. Birds
4. Church and State
 - 4a Church
 - 4b State
5. Clothing and Footwear
6. Creatures
7. Dishes and Cookery
8. Drinking and Smoking
9. Exclamations
10. Expressions and Idioms
11. Farming and Domestic animals
12. 'Fish'
13. Flowers
14. Fruits and Vegetables
15. Games, Dances, Diversions and Sport
16. Health, Moods, Medicine and Witchcraft
17. Historical Administration
18. House and Garden, Building and Buildings
19. Human Types
20. Hunting, Weapons and War
21. 'Insects'
22. Landscape and Places, Topography
23. Languages, Peoples and Tribes
24. Monetary Units and Measures
25. Oriental South Africa
26. Pioneering and Settlement
27. Place Names
28. Plants
29. Syntactic Categories
30. Trade, Mining and Law
31. Travel and Vehicles
32. Trees and Shrubs
33. Weather
34. Writing, Education and the Arts

INDEX TO CATEGORISED SURVEY OF THE VOCABULARY

All categories 1 - 34 are referred to by number after the subjects indexed, e. g. Animal Diseases 11 refers to 11. Farming and Domestic Animals.

1. Address, modes of
 - Adjectives 29adj, 27i, 27j.
 - Administration 4b, Historical 17.
 - Adverbs 29adv, 27k.
 - Africana 18.
 - African terms 2.
 - dwellingings 2, 18.
 - food and drinks 2, 8, 7.
 - music and dancing 2, 15.
 - politics 2, 4b.
 - religion 2, 4a.
 - tribal life 2, 20.
 - tribes 23.
 - witchcraft and medicine 2, 16.
2. African World
 - Agriculture 11.
 - Amphibians 6.
 - Animals, Wild 6. Domestic 11.
 - Animal Diseases 11.
 - Antiques 18.
 - Appearance, Personal 16, (19).
 - Architecture 18.
 - Army, 20, 19.
 - Articles 29red. art., 27l.
 - Beasts 6.
3. Birds
 - Body and Mind, states of 16.
 - Building (Trade) 18.
 - Buildings 18, 11, 17, 4a.
 - ~~Business~~ ³⁰
 - Carnival 15.
 - Caterpillars and Worms 21, 11.
 - Characteristics, personal 16, 10.
 - Children, games 15.
 - school 34.
4. Church and State
 - (4a) Church
 - Church officials 4a, 19.
 - Church buildings 18, 4a.
5. Clothing and Footwear
 - Colloquialisms 10, 9.
 - Colloquial Expressions for People 10, 19.
 - Construction, Building 18.

- Cookery 7.
6. Creatures
Crime 4b, 30, 2.
Crustaceans 12, 7.
Cultivation and Crops 11.
Cultures, prehistoric 34, 23.
Currency 24.
Dances 15.
Dancing, African 15, 2.
Diseases 16.
 of Animals 11.
7. Dishes and Cookery
Diversions and Entertainment 15.
Domestic Animals 11.
8. Drinking and Smoking
Drinks (all types) 8.
Drugs 16, 8.
Eastern aspects, Oriental South Africa 25.
Education 34.
Entertainment 15.
9. Exclamations and Interjections.
10. Expressions and Idioms
Expressions of time, space and amount 24, 10.
Family members 19.
Farmer, Government and the 11, 4b.
11. Farming and Domestic Animals
Fences and Fencing 18, 11.
Fighting 20.
12. Fish
13. Flowers, see also 28, 32.
Foods, 7 14.
Footwear 5.
Freshwater fish 12.
14. Fruits and Vegetables
Fruit, wild and cultivated 14.
Furniture 18.
Game 6, 3
15. Games, Dances, Diversions and Sport
Games, Indoor and Outdoor 15.
Garden(ing) 18, (13, 28, 32).
Government 4b.
Grammar 29 Syntactic categories
 10 Translated structures
Guns 20.
16. Health, Moods, Medicine and Witchcraft
Herbs 16, 28.
17. Historical Administration - also 4b.
Horses and Horsedrawn Conveyances 11, 31.

18. House and Garden, Building and Buildings
Household Equipment 18.
Houses 18, (2).
19. Human Types
Humour 15.
20. Hunting, Weapons and War
Idioms 10.
Indian Terms, Clothing, Ingredients etc. 25, 7.
21. 'Insects'
Insect Pests 11, 21.
Intensifiers 29adv, 10.
Interjections 9.
Interpolations 9.
Journeys 31, 26.
22. Landscape and Places, Topography
Landscape 22, 27a, 31, 26.
23. Languages, Peoples and Tribes
Languages 23, 4b.
Law 4b, 30.
Liquor 8.
Liquor Trade 8, 30.
Living Things (non-human) 3, 6, 12, 21.
Love and Lovers 15.
Malay Terms 25.
Mammals 6.
Marine Life 12.
Measures 24.
Medicines 16, 2.
Mercantile Law 30.
Mind and Body, states of 16.
Mining 30.
Modes of Address 1.
Modifiers 29adj, 27i, 27j.
24. Monetary Units and Measures
Money and Payment 24, 11.
Moods 16.
Music 15.
Musical Instruments 15, 2.
Objets 18.
Officials 19, 17, (Military 20).
25. Oriental South Africa
Pastures and Grazing 11.
People, 19, 10.
Peoples 23.
26. Pioncering and Settlement
27. Place Names
Places 22, 27.

- Places of Entertainment 15, 30, 8.
Plant Diseases 11.
Plant Pests 11, 4b.
28. Plants (see also 11, 13, 14, 32.)
Police 4b
Politicians 4b, 19.
Politics 4b, 2.
Prehistoric Man 23, 34.
Prepositions 29prep, 27k.
Priests and Church Officials 4a, 19.
Pronouns and Pseudo-pronouns 29prn, 27e.
Pseudo-verbs 9, 10, 29vb.
Public Buildings 18, 4b.
Races 23, 4b.
Rainfall 33, 11.
Redundancies 29red.
Religion 4a, 2, 25.
Reptiles 6.
Roads and Traffic 31.
Schools 34.
Settlers and Settlement 26.
Shellfish 12.
Shoes 5.
Shrubs 32, 28.
Slang 10, 9, (19).
Smoking 8.
Snakes 6.
Spiders 21.
Sport 15.
State, the 4a, 17.
Stock Farming 11.
Students 34.
Supernatural 16, 2.
29. Syntactic Categories
Timber 18, 32.
Tools 18.
Topography 22, 27a.
Toys 15.
30. Trade, Mining and Law
Trade 30, 8.
Trains 31.
Translated Expressions 10, 29.
Translated words : translations appear in the etymology
given with the entry.
31. Travel and Vehicles
32. Trees and Shrubs
Tribal Life 2.
Tribes 23.

- University Life 34,
- Vegetables 14, cooked 7.
- Vehicles, Cars etc. 31.
- Verbs, Verb Phrases 29vb, 27f, 27g.
- Wagons 31, 11, 26.
- Wagon Travel 31, 26.
- Warfare 20.
- Wartime Usage 20.
- Weapons 20.
- 33. Weather
 - Witchcraft 16, 2.
 - Woods 18, 21.
- 34. Writing, Education and the Arts

1. Modes of Address

These are terms used by people addressing each other, formally and informally: white to white, black to black, white to black and black to white. Some are respectful, some friendly, some unfriendly, some abusive and one, pula, a form of greeting. The effect of several of these may vary with context, e. g. country Europeans might address an African as 'boy' with no idea of the offence this might give in the city, and the term 'lady' is frequently regarded as an impertinence by those unaware of its formal background. Most of these are found at 19. Human Types, 10. Expressions and Colloquialisms or 2. African World.

aia	kêrel	nkosikazi
askoek	koelie	ntombazaan
auntie	lady	ntombi
baas	ma-	ntshebe
bangbroek	maat, ou	oom
basie	madala	ou
bhuti	mafuta	oubaas
bliksem	makoti	ouboet
blikskottel	mama	ouma
boesman	mampara	oupa
boet	man	ousie
kleinboet	meester	ousus/sis
ouboet	meid	outa
boetie	meneer	pampoenkop
buti	mevrouw	pellie, ou
chief	miesies	poppie
coolie	mijnheer	[pula]
dikkop	missis	sell out
dominee	(u)mlungu	sisi
domkop	mnumzane	skat
donder	mompara	smeclap
dwaalie	morena	swaer
goodself, your	moruti	tannie
Heer	[munt(u)]	tante
Here	mynheer	tata
hotnot	nanny	thing, my
houtkop	neef	[third person forms (qv)]
John	nefie	umfundisi
juffrou	niggie	umlungu
kaffer		umnumzane
kaffir	nkosaan	uncle
kehla	nkosi	vetsak
		vroteier
		voetsak
		vrou

2. African World

The words in this category are not all taken from African languages, though many of them are. The collection contains names of customs and ceremonies, and of political and other factors in the world of the tribal and the urban African in the Republic. Origin in an African language is not a criterion for any word's inclusion here: many African names for birds (3), beasts (6) or fish (12) etc. (oribi, songololo, tollie, tsessebe, tsetse fly, damba, mfezi, sakabula, titihoya) do not belong here, nor do, as a whole, the names of peoples, countries and languages found at 23. It will be seen on the other hand that the vocabulary of the African World as it comes into the usage of English speaking South Africans of whatever colour, does not consist entirely of African language borrowings.

Examples only can be given here:

1. The supernatural: amadlozi, amatongo, lightning bird, tagati, mamlambo, nyanga, herbalist, sangoma, rainmaker, uhlaka, dolos, witchdoctor, throw the bones, smell out, muti, muti shop, bula party, tikoloshe.
2. Initiation: abakwetha, circumcision school, circumcision dance.
3. Tribal government and ceremonies: Great Place, indaba, amapakati, imbongi, izibongo, royal beast, kgotla, pitso, wash spears, eat up, hlonipa, headman, beer drink.
4. Food and Drink: Most items of diet and drink here, to be found also at 7, 8, and 14 are from African languages (putu, puza, taloviya, madumbi,^x babala, amaas, govini, izindlubu, imfe) though some are not (calabash milk, uitloop, K.B., queen's tears, sour porridge.)^x mngqusho
5. Modes of Address or Reference: The category includes also modes of address and reference to Africans, usually to other Africans (sisi, bhuti, tata, mama, ousie, homeboy, kehla, mafuta, madala.) There are however exceptions here: boesman to a coloured, mlungu to a white, suliman of a Muslim Indian, amabuny of the Afrikaners (Boers), amajoni of soldiers, abelungu of whites.
6. Politics and the African World: Part of the vocabulary of the political scene affecting the African is here (endorse out, reference book, domboek, dompas, aid-centre, pass, citizenship certificate, influx control, 'immo' Act, non-voter, sell-out.)
7. Urban Life: Aspects of township life of the urban African are also reflected:
Music: mbaqanga, malombo, kwela, penny whistle.
Police: pick up van, kwela-kwela, blackjack,

Administration: U.B.C., boardman, location, township.

Crime and Punishment: lekgotla (makgotla), tsotsi, skebengu/a, amalaita, pirate taxi.

Social life: shebeen kings, queens and bangies, the stokvel parties, bigtime stokvel, tickey line stokvel, aunties and 'underground.'

Religion: Order of Ethiopia, Zionists, Donkey Church, 'Church', manyano, umfundisi, moruti, Tixo, Unkulunkulu, and

Marriage: lobola versus vat-en-sit.

There are of course numerous items which are not easily classified - some African English usages: call, 'off', sleep; African names of cities: Egoli, Thekwini; exclamations hau, yu, mawo found at 9 and the names of weapons also at 20.

This is a limited compass in which to try to do justice to the vocabulary of the African World. However, though much is omitted, there may still be a large number of terms strange to those who never read the black press, or whose everyday life is without African contacts. This collection is an attempt at a compromise between vocabulary known to those whose contact with the African world is minimal and known to those, black or white, who are immersed in it.

abafazi	assegai	bones
abakwetha	auntie	bones, throw the
abelungu	babala	bonsella
African	bangie	book pass
African time	bantu beer	borrow
ai-ai	baruti	bula party
aid centre	basela	Bunga
aikona	Basutu blanket	buti
amaas	battle stick	by-and-by
amabunu	bayete	calabash
amadlozi	beadwork	calabash milk
amadoda	beast, royal	calabash piano
amadumbi	bechu/beshu	call
amagoduka	been-to (see overseas)	Captain
amajoni	beerdrink	Church
amalaita	beshu	circumcision school
amandla	bhuti	circumcision dance
amanzi	bibi	citizenship certificate
amapakati	bioscope	court
amasoja	blackjack	dolos
amatongo	boardman	domboek
amatungulu	boesman	dompas
A.N.C.	[boetie]	Donkey Church
	bombella train	

eating house	ingubu	mahoga
eat up	initiation school	maiza
eGoli	inkone/(i)nkona	makgotla
endorse out	inkesaan	makoti
enkosi	inkosi	makulu
Ethiopia, Order of	inkosikazi	mali
faction fight	insangu	malombo
fanakalo	intombazaan	malombo drums
father, small/big	intombi	mama
fazi	inyanga	mamlambo
faziland	izibongo	maningi
'flu	izindlubu	manyano
gavini/govini	kahle	marimba
gogogo	karos	[Mashona piano]
gologo	kaya	mawo
govini	K.B.	Mayibuye Afrika
Great	kehla	mbaqanga
Great Place	[kerrie]	mbira
Great wife	kgotla	mbombela
Great son	kia	mkonto
gubu	kierie	Mkonto ka Shaka
gwaai		mlungu
[half jack]	knobkierie	mngqusho
haja	kraal	mnumzana/e
hamba	kraalhead	modjadji
hamba kahle	kraal, royal	[monkey's wedding]
hau	kwedin	moochi
headman	kwela	morena
headring	kwela-kwela	moruti
herbalist	lambile strap	mother, small/big
herdboy	lapa 1 and 2	mpundulu bird
hlonipa	lekgotla	mqomboti
hlonipa word	lightning bird	mtagati
home boy/girl	liretlo	mtombo
hut	lobola	mtombo mmela
hut tax	lobola cattle	muhle
imbongi	lobola system	muntu
imfe	etc.	muti
Immo Act	ma-	muti man
impi	maas	muti shop
impundulu bird	mabela	(u)mutsha
indaba	madala	ndambola
Indhlunkulu	madolo	ndiblishi
induku	madumbi	ngoma
induna	mafufunyane/a	ngoma dancing
influx control	mafuta	(i)ngoni
	mahewu	ngubu

nipinyane/a	scoff	throw the bones
(i)nkona	sell-out	tiekie line
(i)nkosaan	sgomfa(a)ne	tikoloshe
(i)nkosi	Shaka's Spear	Tixo
(i)nkosikazi	skaf-tin	[tjanga]
[non-black]	shebeen	tokoloshe
non-voter	shebeen king	too good/much
(i)ntombazaan	shebeen party	township
(i)ntombi	shebeen queen	township life
ntshebe	shebeen trade	township jazz
nunu	shimiyane	tribesman
nyanga	shu shu	tshwala
'off'	sisi	tsotsi
Order of Ethiopia	skebenga/u	tsotsism
ousie	skipper	tula
[panga]	skokkiaan queen	twala
pass	sleep	U.B.C.
pass laws	sour porridge	ufufunyana
pass burning etc.	small father/mother	uhlaka
peetsho	smell out	umfaan
pelile	Spear, the	umfazi
penny whistle	spears, to wash	umlungu
piccanin	stad/stat	umnumzane
[pick up van]	stamp block	umthagati
pirate taxi	stamper	[umzimbeta]
pitso	stertreim	umfundisi
potwana	[stokfel]	unkulunkulu
[pula]	stokvel	[underground]
[pundus] *	storosha	uitloop
putu	[straight]	usutu
puza	suka	utywala
queen, shebeen	suliman	vat-en-sit
(queen's) tears	(m)tagathi	vat-en-sit woman
rainmaker	[takes me up to ...]	vat-en-sit marriage
rain queen	taloviya	wash spears, to
red	tata	witchdoctor
reference book	tears, queen's	worry
ritual murder/killing	tears of the King of England	yebo
sala kahle		yu/yo
sangoma	thekwini	Zimbabwe
scale		Zimbabwean
		Zionist

* See at takes me up to ... ^x

3. Birds

The list which follows contains the names of those birds included in this work. These have been deliberately confined to names commonly encountered in everyday life, the press or non-specialist texts. A detailed treatment of South African bird-life is the province of the experienced ornithologist rather than of the lexicographer. I am indebted to Mr. C.J. Skead of Grahamstown for his help in the compilation of the list of scientific names of the birds below, which has been made from the most up-to-date check lists available. (Note: many of the scientific names in the text itself have been taken from older sources and have been replaced in the literature of ornithological science by those given below.)

aasvoël	<u>Gypætidae</u> fam. <u>Gyps coprotheres</u> (<u>G. kolbii</u> etc.)	hadedah	<u>Bostrychia hagedash</u>
berghaan	<u>Terathopius ecaudatus</u>	hammerkop)	<u>Scopus umbretta</u>
bergsysie	see <u>dikbek</u> ; also <u>Serinus alario</u>	hammerhead)	
bleshoender	<u>Fulica cristata</u>	honey guide/indicator	<u>Indicatoridae</u> fam.
blou valk	see <u>valk</u>	Jacky Hangman/Hanger	<u>Lanius collaris</u>
blou kraan	<u>Anthropoides paradisea</u>	Jan Fiskaal	<u>Lanius collaris</u>
bokmakierie	<u>Malaconotus zeylonus</u>	Jan Groentjie	<u>Nectarinia famosa</u>
bontrok	<u>Saxicola torquata</u>	Jan Pierewiet	<u>Malaconotus zeylonus</u>
borrie vink	<u>Ploceidae</u> fam.	Johnny Hangman	<u>Lanius collaris</u>
bosduif	<u>Columba guinea</u>	kakelaar	<u>Phoeniculus purpureus</u>
bosluisvoël	<u>Ardeola ibis</u> (the cattle egret)	kaffir crane	<u>Gruidae</u> fam. <u>Balearica pavonina regulorum</u>
bromvoël	<u>Bucorvus leadbeateri</u>	kaffir finch/vink	<u>Euplectes</u> spp.
bully	See <u>dikbek</u>	kalkoentjie	<u>Macronyx capensis</u>
butcherbird	<u>Lanius collaris</u>	ka(r)nallie	<u>Lanius collaris</u>
canaribyster	<u>Lanius collaris</u>	kersie)	<u>Zosterops</u> spp.
commando voël	<u>Burhinus capensis</u>	kersogie)	
coucal	<u>Centropus</u> spp.	kiewietjie	<u>Vanellus coronatus</u>
dassie vanger	<u>Aquila verreauxii</u>	k(n)orhaan	<u>Otididae</u> fam.
diedrik	<u>Chrysococcyx caprius</u>	kokkewiet	<u>Malaconotus zeylonus</u>
dikbek	<u>Serinus sulphuratus</u>	koornvreter	<u>Passer melanurus</u>
dikkop	<u>Burhinus</u> spp.	korhaan	<u>Otididae</u> fam.
duiker	<u>Phalacrocoracidae</u> fam.	koringvoël	<u>Plocepasser</u> spp.
fiscal shrike	<u>Lanius collaris</u>	kouvoël	<u>Aquila rapax</u>
fink	<u>Ploceidae</u> fam.	kraai	<u>Corvidae</u> fam.
flap	<u>Euplectes progne</u>	kraai, withals	<u>Corvus albicollis</u>
geelbek (duck)	<u>Anas undulata</u>	kraalogie	<u>Zosterops</u> spp.
glasogie	<u>Zosterops</u> spp.	kwêvoël	<u>Corythaixoides concolor</u>
go-away bird	<u>Corythaixoides concolor</u>		

laksman	<u>Lanius collaris</u>	sugarbird	Promeropidae fam.
lammergeyer	<u>Gypaetus barbatus</u>	suikerbekkie)	Nectariniidae fam.
lammervanger	Aquilidae fam.	sunbird)	
locust bird	Ciconiidae fam. see also springkaan- voël	sysie, berg	<u>Scrinus sulphuratus</u>
loerie, bush	Trogonidae fam. <u>Narina trogon</u>	tarentaal	Numididae fam.
grey ~)	Musophagidae fam.	tickbird	see bosluisvoël
Knysna ~)		tingtinkie	Sylviidae fam.
vlei ~	<u>Centropus super-</u> <u>cilius burchellii</u> see rainbird	titihoya	<u>Vanellus melanop-</u> <u>terus</u>
mahem	<u>Balearica pavonina</u> <u>regulorum</u>	toppie	<u>Pycnonotus</u> spp. inc. <u>Pycnonotus capensis</u>
malgas	Sulidae fam. <u>Sula</u> <u>bassana capensis</u>	'umfundisi'	<u>Corvus albicollis</u> see withalskraai
monkey bird	<u>Phoeniculus</u> <u>purpureus</u>	valk/kie, blou	<u>Elanus caeruleus</u>
mossie	<u>Passer melanurus</u>		dwerg (pygmy) <u>Polio-</u> <u>hierax semitorqua-</u> <u>tus</u>
mousebird)	Coliidae fam.	edel	<u>Falco biarmicus</u>
muisvoël)		groot muisvoël	<u>Corythaixoides</u> <u>concolor</u> (.kwëvoël)
			rooi <u>Falco tinnunculus</u>
Namaqua dove	<u>Oena capensis</u>	vink	Ploceidae fam.
Namaqua partridge	<u>Pterocles</u> <u>namaqua</u> (sand grouse)	vlei loerie	<u>Centropus supercili-</u> <u>burchellii</u>
Piet-my-vrou	<u>Cuculus solitarius</u>	-voël, bosluis	<u>Ardeola ibis</u>
pou(w)	Otididae fam. gompou (Kori bustard) <u>Otis kori</u>	-voël, brom	<u>Bucorvus leadbeateri</u>
rainbird	<u>Centropus supercili-</u> <u>burchellii</u>	-voël, kommando	<u>Burhinus capensis</u>
roodebekkie)	<u>Estrilda astrild</u>	-voël, sprinkaan	see sprinkaan- voël, Ciconiidae fam. and Glareolidae fam.
rooibekkie)		-voël, kwë	<u>Corythaixoides</u> <u>concolor</u>
rooi vink	<u>Euplectes orix</u>	-voël, spook	<u>Malaconotus hypo-</u> <u>pyrrhus</u>
sakabula	<u>Euplectes progne</u>	water fiskaal	<u>Laniarius ferrugineus</u>
secretary bird	<u>Sagittarius</u> <u>serpentarius</u>	weaver bird	Ploceidae fam.
spookvoël	<u>Malaconotus hypopyrrhus</u>	white eye	<u>Zosterops</u> spp.
spreeu	Sturnidae fam.	widow bird	<u>Viduae</u> (Ploceidae fam.) or <u>Euplectes</u> spp.
sprinkaanvoël, klein	<u>Glareola</u> <u>nordmanni</u>	withalskraai	<u>Corvus albicollis</u>
sprinkaanvoël, groot	Ciconiidae fam.	witogie	see white eye
stompstertjie (Crombec)	<u>Sylvietta</u> <u>rufescens</u>		
strandlopertjie	Charadriidae fam.		

fam. = family

spp. = species

Category 4. Church and State, is for convenience divided into 4a. (Church) and 4b. (State)

4a. Church contains a mixed collection of terms including names of certain denominations, of priests and other officials concerned with the Church, and of Church buildings, business and dress. Apart from the single Jewish term Reverend all these have to do with Christian Churches. Some Islamic terms will be found at 25. Oriental South Africa but Hindu terms are omitted. African Separatist Churches such as the Order of Ethiopia, the 'Donkey Church' and the Zionists appear here, but any words belonging to ancestor worship among Africans are at 2. African World.¹

actuarius	Indian Reformed Church	N. H. K.
baruti	Kerk, the	Order of Ethiopia
boeke vat	Kerkbode	ouderling
'Church'	kerkhuis/house	pastorie
Church of the Province	Kerkraad	Political Commiss- ioner
Colenso Church	konsistorie	
diaken	koster	predikant
dominee	manel	preekstoel
Donkey Church	manyano	Private School
Dopper Kerk/Church	meneer (dominee)	Province of South Africa, Church of
D. R. C.	moruti	
Ds.	Nagmaal	Reformed Church
Dutch Reformed Church	Nagmaal clothes	Reverend
Ethiopia, Order of	Nagmaalhuis/house	[Roomse gevaar]
[gaatjieponner]	Nagmaal tent	scriba, 1 and 2
[gatjaponner]	Nagmaal wine/wyn	suster
gemeente	Nederduits Gereform- eerde Kerk	umfundisi
Hervormde Kerk		white tie
huisbesoek	N. G. K.	volkslied Zionist

[colloquialisms]

1. As are African names for God.

4. Church and State

4b. State

This category contains much of the political vocabulary of the present day, and terms relating to Government and basic law. Divisions under headings are tentatively suggested and it must be stressed that this is only one way of treating this material.

These divisions are as follows and there are naturally overlaps between some of them:

1. Government: Central and local, old and new.

This contains the names of certain state officials, certain acts and certain central policies of Government in South Africa, and national organisations such as the army, the railways etc..

Administrator, Alderman, apartheid, grand/petty, banning order, bannings, black spot, Book of Life, Border Area, Border Industry, Border status, B.O.S.S. bill, Citizenship certificate, classification, classify 1, classify 2, dam, deproclaim, District, District road, Division, Divisional Council, [drostyd], exit permit, general dealer's licence, [Government flour, Government sugar,] Grondwet, Group Areas Act, Group Area, homeland, hotel, hunting season, [I.D.B. Act], Indian Council, Influx control, Immorality Act, job reservation, [koffiegeld], mailboat/ship, -master, metrication, multinational, National Road, National Service, Order of Good Hope, [pasbrief], pass laws, Pretoria, Raad, raadsheer, Republic, the, reclassification, reclassify, release, resettlement, resettlement camp, [Reserves], rotel, R.S.A., S.A.B.C., S.A.B.S., S.A.R., separate development, State President, Suppression of Communism Act, U.D.F., Union, the, [V.O.C.], Volksraad, X.D.C., [Z.A.R.], zone, rezone.

2. Law

A small division, this contains aspects of the law as it pertains to the individual (marriage, wills, servitudes, sales) and not to the State as a whole.

Ante nuptial contract, bond, community of property, Diamond Trade Act, kinderbewys, kustingbrief, mynpacht, -pad (trekpad, rypad, voetpad), rouwkoop, twala, trek pad, uitkoop, voetpad, voetstoots.

3. Organisations

The names of State and non-State organisations appear here whether political or otherwise.

A.N.C. 1 and 2, Black Sash, Boerenasie, Broederbond, C.S.I.R., H.N.P. 1 and 2, H.S.R.C., Indobond, Mkonto ka Shaka, [Nat-en-Sap], Noodhulpliga, O.B., Ossewa Brandwag, -Raad, Rapportryers, Ruiterswag, Sakekamer, Shaka's Spear, Spear, the, United Party, U.P., Volksraad, Voortrekkers.

4. Politicians

Official and non-official designations for politicians make up this division, some items are therefore colloquial.

Betoger, [betoging], bloedsap, broeder, herstigte, [huisbesoek], jabroer, Nat., opstoker, Prog., remskoen, Sap, smelter, samesmelter, volksleier, verkrampste, verligte, ^xYoung Turk (now Reformist), zoggie, [Zoo train], [mbongo].

5. Police

Designations for different branches of the police are here, and some of the vocabulary of what might be called 'Crime and Punishment.'

Bandiet, blackjack, bloubaadjie, blourokkie, Boere, B.O.S.S., Breakwater, dagga offence, farm prison, I.D.B., klopjag, kwela-kwela, pass offences, pick-up van, prison farm, Robben Island, S.A.P., S.B., Special Branch, tronk, Zarp.

6. The Races

These words are simply official designations of certain race groups in South Africa.

Baster, blanke, Coloured, European, nation, nie-blanke, non-European, non-White, White.

7. Politics and the African

Much of this material appears at 2. African World: these are terms concerning aspects of government policy as they affect Africans in the Republic.

Aid centre, A.N.C., apartheid (grand/petty), B.A.A.B., B.A.D., Bantu Affairs, Bantu Education, Bantustan, blackjack, black spot, boardman, bookpass, captain, citizenship certificate, Court, domboek, dompas, endorse out, exit permit, Group Area, Group Areas Act, headman, homeland, homeland leaders, policy etc., hut tax, job reservation, kwela kwela, location, Mkonto ka Shaka, mnumzane/a, pass, pass laws, reclassify, reclassification, Reserves, resettlement, resettlement area, resettlement camp, separate development, Shaka's Spear, township council, trekpass, twala, U.B.C., X.D.C., Zimbabwe.

8. Government and the Farmer

The terms here appear at 11. Farming and Domestic Animals but are collected at this point to indicate certain government concerns which are specifically with the farmer.

animal unit, boetebos, farm prison, Land Bank, plant migration, proclaimed weed, skut, small/large stock unit, stock reduction scheme, stock unit, ^{SSU}togt labour system, [the Rinderpest].

9. Language

A few terms associated with bilingualism: bilingual, the Taal, taaltoets, Taal Beweging (Language Movement), tweetalig [Taal fees, Taalstryd]

10. Politics and the Emotions

The terms in this division are all words or thoughts provocative of emotions whether patriotic or not; there are symbols like Die Stem, the Vierkleur and the kruithoring: 'battles long ago', Anglo Boer War, Vryheidsoorlog, Opstand; national identity summed up in the term Volk and its compounds, Afrikanderdom and Afrikanerskap; and trouble-making concepts like swartgevaar, baasskap, kragdadigheid, boerehaat, stemvee, broedertwis and 'laager.'

Anglo Boer War, baasskap, Boer, boerehaat, broedertwis, domboek, dompas, Eendrag Maak Mag, 'gogga', khaki gevaar, kragdadigheid, kruithoring, laager, Opstand, opstokery, overseas interference, remskoen politics, rooi/gevaar, Roomse gevaar, standpoint, Die Stem, stemvee, stryddag, swartgevaar, [toenadering-], uitlander, Vierkleur, Volk, Volkseie, Volkslied, Volksvreemde, Volkswil, Voortrekkers, Vryheidsoorlog, Vrystaat.

Administrator	black spot	Coloured
Afrikanerdom	blanke	Community of Property
Afrikanerskap	bloedsap	Court
aid centre	bloubaadjie	C.S.I.R.
alderman	blourokkie	dagga offence
A.N.C.	boardman	dam
Anglo Boer War	Boer	deproclaim
animal unit	'Boere' (SAP)	Diamond Trade Act
antenuptial contract	Boerehaat	District
apartheid (grand)	Boerenasie	District road
apartheid (petty)	boetebos	Division
B.A.A.B.	bond	Divisional Council
baasskap	Bond	domboek
B.A.D.	Book of Life	dompas
ban	book pass	drostdy
banning	Border area	Eendrag Maak Mag
banning order	Border industry	endorse out
bandiet	Border status	European
Bantu	B.O.S.S.	exit permit
Bantu affairs	Breakwater	farm prison
Bantu education	Broederbond, -er	general dealer's licence
Bantustan	Broeder	'gogga'
Baster	broedertwis	Good Hope, Order of
betoger	Captain	[Government flour]
bilingual	citizenship certificate	[Government sugar]
blackjack	classification	Grondwet
Black Sash	classify, 1 and 2.	Group Area

Group Areas Act	Non-European	rooigevaar
headman (kraal head)	Non-White	Roomse gevaar
herstigie	Noodhulpliga	rotel
H.N.P.	O.B.	rouwkoop
homeland	Opstand	R.S.A.
homeland leaders etc.	opstoker	Ruiterwag rypad
hotel	Order of Good Hope	S.A.B.C.
huisbesoek	Ossewa Brandwag	S.A.B.S.
hunting season	overseas interference	Sakekamer
hut tax	owerheid	S.A.P.
H.S.R.C.	pad	sap, bloedsap
I.D.B.	trekpad	S.A.R.
I.D.B. Act	rypad	S.B.
Immorality Act	voetpad	separate development
Indian Council	[pasbrief]	Shaka's Spear
Indobond	pass	skut
influx control	pass laws	small stock unit
jabroer	pass offences	smelter
job reservation	Permanent Force	samesmelter
khaki gevaar	(P.F.)	Spear, the
kinderbewys	pick-up van	Special Branch
klopjag	plant migration	SSU -stan
koffiegeld	Pretoria	standpoint
kragdadig	prison farm	State President
kragdadigheid	proclaimed weed	Stem, die
kruithoring	Prog.	stemvee
kustingbrief	Raad	stock reduction scheme
kwela-kwela	Volksraad	stock, animal unit
laager	Raadsheer	Stormjaer
Land Bank	Rapportryers	stryddag
location	reclassify	Suppression of
mailboat/ship	reclassification	Communism Act
-master	reference book	swart gevaar
mbongo	release	Taal, the
metrication	remskoen	Taalbeweging
Mkonto ka Shaka	remskoen politics	Taalfees
mnumzane	remskoen party	Taaltoets
multinational	Republic, the	taalstryd
mynpacht	Reserves	Territorial Authority
Nat	resettlement	toenadering
Nat en Sap	resettlement camp	togt labour
Nation	resettlement area	togt system
White nation etc.	resettlement removal	township
National Road	[Rinderpest, the]	township council
National Service	Robben Island	trekpad
nie-blanke		trek pass

tronk	[V.O.C.]	X.D.C.
twala	voetpad	Young Turks
tweetalig	Volk	Z.A.R.
U.B.C.	Volkslied	Zarp
U.D.F.	Volksraad	zoggie
Uitlander	Volkswil	zone, re-
Union, the	Voortrekkers	Zoo train
United Party	Voortrekker Monu-	Zimbabwe
U. P.	ment, victory etc.	
verkrampte	[Vryheidsoorlog]	Zuid Afrikaansche
verligte	Vrystaat	Republiek
Vierkleur	White	

5. Clothing and Footwear

This category contains the names of various garments, shoes, and the materials used for their manufacture (the voerchitz and linnebaai of earlier times, or the modern Swazi Print or Swakara). It also includes the terms used in South Africa to refer to clothing of particular kind or significance (kisklere, Nagmaal jacket/suit/clothes, morning gown, skolliebroek, slip-slops etc.). Listed here too are those terms relating to African, Indian and Malay dress which have been included in the text: most of the African terms appear also in 2. African World and the Indian and Malay words in 25. Oriental South Africa.

African print	kafferbaai	skipper
agterkaros	kaffir-	skolliebroek
baadjie	kaffir print	slip-slops
Basuto blanket	kaffir sheeting	stertriem
beach thongs	kaparrang	Swakara
beadwork	kappie	Swazi print
bechu	kappie sis	tackies
becreeping cap	karakul	[tanga]
beshu	karos	tiger's eye
bloudruk	agterkaros	tjanga/lappie
broek	voorkaros	toering
broekies	kisklere	[totty pink]
shu-shu broekies	klapbroek	toudang
[Bushveld Ben]	(8) -kraal-	[tsotsi suit
champals	Jobskrale	tsotsi trousers]
choli	kudu leather	(u)mutsha
[coolie pink]	lambile strap	vel(d)broek
cossie/cozzie	linnebaai	vel(d)skoen
costume	manel	voersis
crackers	moochi	voorchitz
doek	morning gown	voorkaros
kopdoek	mundani	Voortrekker dress
Duitse sis	mutsha	Voortrekker costume
German print	Nagmaal	white tie
girdle of famine	Nagmaal clothes	
gown	Nagmaal jacket etc.	
morning gown	ngubu	
headring	ostrich skin	
hunger belt	safari suit	
ingubu	sambalbroek	
jas	shu-shu broekies	
[Job's tears/krale]	sis	
	Duitse sis	
	kappie sis	

6. Creatures

The list which follows contains a selection of the names of those living creatures commonly known in South Africa; names which are apt to occur in non-specialist literature or the press. They include mammals, reptiles and amphibians and no attempt has been made at a classification which would more properly be the province of the naturalist than that of the lexicographer. I am indebted to Mr. C.J. Skead of Grahamstown for his help in the compilation of the list of names below which has been made from the most up-to-date check-lists available. (Note: In many instances the scientific names given in the text for category 6. items are from earlier sources and have been superseded by those given here.)

-aap		bushbuck	<u>Tragelaphus scriptus sylvaticus</u>
aardvark	<u>Orycteropus afer</u>		
aardwolf	<u>Proteles cristatus</u>	brulpadda	<u>Pyxicephalus adspersus</u>
akkedis		Cape cobra	<u>Naja nivea</u>
antbear	<u>Orycteropus afer</u>	das, klip	<u>Procavia capensis</u>
bakkop(slang)	See ringed cobra	dassie	<u>Procaviidae fam.</u>
baviaan	<u>Papio ursinus</u>	dik-dik	<u>Madoqua kirki damarensis</u>
bergadder	<u>Bitis atropos</u>	diving goat	See duiker
berg haas	<u>Pedetes capensis (cafer)</u>	duiker	<u>Sylvicapra grimmia (genus Cephalophus)</u>
blaasop	<u>Breviceps spp.</u>		
blesbok	<u>Damaliscus dorcas phillipsi</u>	eland	<u>Taurotragus oryx</u>
blesmol	<u>Georychus capensis</u>	geel meerkat	See meerkat
blouaap	<u>Cercopithecus aethiops</u>	gemsbok	<u>Oryx gazella</u>
bloubok	* <u>Cephalophus monticola</u>	gharretjie	See meerkat
blue buck	* <u>Cephalophus monticola</u>	gnu	See wildebeest
bok:		graatjie meerkat	See meerkat
bles ~	<u>Damaliscus dorcas-phillipsi</u>	green mamba)	
blou ~	<u>Cephalophus monticola</u>	groen mamba)	<u>Dendroaspis angusticeps</u>
bonte ~	<u>Damaliscus dorcas dorcas</u>	grysbok	<u>Raphicerus melanotis</u>
bos ~	<u>Tragelaphus scriptus sylvaticus</u>	haas,	
pronk ~	See springbok	berg ~)	<u>Pedetes cafer,</u>
spring ~	<u>Antidorcas marsupialis</u>	spring ~)	<u>P. capensis</u>
ribbok, etc.		hartebees	<u>Alcelaphus bucelaphus</u>
bontebok	See bok, bonte	hasie	
boomdassie	<u>Dendrohyrax arboreus</u>	herald snake	See rooilip
boomslang	<u>Dispholidus typus</u>	impala	<u>Aepyceros melampus</u>
bosbok	<u>Tragelaphus scriptus sylvaticus</u>	janblom	<u>Breviceps parva</u>
bosvark	<u>Potamochoerus porcus koiropotamus</u>	kaaiman	See leguaan
bushbaby	<u>Galago spp.</u>	kanna	See eland
		kat, rooi,	
		muske(1)jaat	
		{kommetjiegat}	
		klipspringer	<u>Oreotragus oreotragus</u>
		koggelmander,	
		bloukop	<u>Agama atra</u>

* Also Hippotragus leucophaeus

kommetjiegat/kat	<u>Atilax paludinosus</u>	sitatunga	<u>Tragelaphus spekei</u>
kudu, koedoe	<u>Tragelaphus strepsiceros</u>	skaapsteker	<u>Psammophyllax</u> spp.
kwagga, kwakka,	See quagga	-slang; spuig, bakkop	See ringhals, rinkhals
leguaan, likkewaan	<u>Varanus niloticus</u> (water leguaan)	springbok	<u>Antidorcas marsupialis</u>
	<u>V. albigularis</u> (rock leguaan)	springhaas	<u>Pedetes capensis</u>
mamba, green	<u>Dendroaspis angusticeps</u>	steenbok	<u>Raphicerus campestris</u>
mamba, black	<u>D. polylepis</u>	stokstertmeerkat	<u>Suricata suricatta</u>
meerkat		strandwolf	<u>Hyaena brunnea</u>
waaierstert	Cape Ground Squirrel <u>Xerus inauris</u>	tier, tiger	<u>Panthera pardus</u>
stokstert	<u>Suricata suricatta</u>	tiger wolf	<u>Crocuta crocuta</u>
graatjie	See stokstert meerkat <u>Suricata suricatta</u>	trekbok	See springbok (ken)
yellow/red	<u>Cynictis penicillata</u>	tseessebe	<u>Damaliscus lunatus</u>
mfezi	<u>Naja nivea</u>	waaierstert meerkat	See meerkat
-muis		waterskaap)	Sitatunga
muishond	<u>Ictonyx striatus</u> (Mustelidae fam.)	waterkudu)	<u>Tragelaphus spekei</u>
muske(l)jaat kat	<u>Genetta tigrina</u> <u>Genetta</u> spp.	wild dog	<u>Lycaon pictus</u>
nagapie	<u>Galago</u> spp. <u>Galago moholi</u>	wildebees(t)	blou/blue <u>Connochaetes taurinus</u> black/swart <u>Connochaetes gnou</u>
oribi	<u>Ourebia ourebi</u>	wilde perd	<u>Equus zebra</u>
platanna	<u>Xenopus laevis</u>	wolf	maned ~ see aardwolf strand ~ (qv) tiger ~ (qv)
pronkbok	<u>Antidorcas marsupialis</u>	ystervark	<u>Hystrix africae australis</u>
(springbok)	<u>Belis arietans</u>	zebra	<u>Equus zebra</u>
puffadder	<u>Equus quagga</u>	zeekoe	<u>Hippopotamus amphibius</u>
quagga	<u>Equus quagga</u>		
ratel	<u>Mellivora capensis</u>		
reebok, rhebok, ribbok			
vaal rhe/re/ribbok	<u>Pelea capreolus</u>		
rooi rhe/re/ribbok	<u>Redunca fulvorufula</u>		
rietbok	<u>Redunca arundinum</u>		
ringhals)			
rinkals)	<u>Hemachatus haemachatus</u>		
rooibok	See impala <u>Aepyceros melampus</u>		
rooikat	<u>Felis caracal</u>		
rooilip	<u>Crotaphopeltis hotamboëia</u>		
sassaby	See tseessebe		
seacow	<u>Hippopotamus amphibius</u>		

fam. = family

spp. = species

7. Dishes and Cookery

This category includes the names of traditional meat and fish dishes, cakes, sweetmeats, conserves, puddings, pies, types of porridge, vegetable or rice dishes, dried or pickled meat or fish, and beverages, as well as some Indian and Malay dishes. On the whole what might be termed the 'raw ingredients', edible fish, game, fruit and vegetables, are not to be found here: these are at 12. Fish, 6. Creatures, 3 Birds and at 14. Fruit and Vegetables (Domestic animals are at 11).

Processed ingredients such as mealie meal, mealie rice, maizena, kuni meal, boermeal etc. and cuts of meat, are included, as are certain Indian spices and ingredients usually best known in Natal. These appear again at 25. Oriental South Africa, as do the dishes, condiments and curries of Indian and Malay origin, (atjar, biriani, blatjang, kalya, halleem, goolab jambo, samoosa) except for those like sosaties and bobotie which have been taken into South African English and into Afrikaans.

amaas	braai	dennepit/pip
angels' food	braairibbetjie	derms
arad	braaivleis	dhai
asbrood	bread/s	dhol/dhal
askoek	bredie	dhunia
atjar	tomato bredie	doodgooi
bake	spinach bredie	elachi
bakoond	hotnotskool bredie	fat cake
begrafnisrys	wateruintjie bredie	fish oil
biltong	breyani	frikkadel
beef biltong	[buck fat]	garam masala
Cape biltong	bunny chow	geelrys
game biltong	burfee	ghurum masala
ostrich biltong	bush tea	
springbok biltong	butter bread	ghee
etc.	butter chilli	
biriani	-butter	goolab jambo
blatjang		government flour
bobotie	household butter	government sugar
boerebeskuit	table butter	gram flour
boeretroos	calabash milk	green mealie bread
boerewors	Cape biltong	guarri honey
boermeel	'Caper' tea	guarri tea
bokkems/oms	carbonaadjie	halleem
bolo	chana flour	honeycake
borrie	chilliebite	hottentot's tea
boud	cooldrink	household butter
'boy's meat'	craytail	Indian parsley

ingelegde vis	misbredie	roosterkoek
jeero	mithai	roti
kaaiings	mngqusho	saamie
kaffir tea	moes	sambal
kalya	monk, fillets of	samoosa
karbonaadjie	mootjie	samp
karreemoer	mos-	sarmie/y
katkop	moskonfyt	sasaties
kirimoer	mosbolletjie	scaf
klinker	mosbeskuit	scare
koeksister	mtombo	scoff
konfyt	naan	semels
moskonfyt	naartjie konfyt	sheepstail fat
naartjie konfyt ^x	niggerball	skaf
teewater konfyt	oblietjie	skilpadpastei
waatlemoen konfyt	ostrich biltong	skirting
kop-en-pootjies	ostrich egg	skof
-kos	ou-vrou-onder-die-	skyfie
padkos	kometers	slap chips
veldkos etc.	padkos	smeerperske
kreef, potted	pannekoek	smoor
krummelpap	pap	smoorvis
kuni meal	krummelpap	smoor chicken
maagbom	mielie/mealie pap	snoeksmoor
maas	stywepap	snikkie
maaskaas	papad	snoek
mabela(meal)	pastei	snoekpekelaar
maizena	hoenderpastei	smoorsnoek
masala	skilpadpastei	snysels
garam/ghurum	vleispastei	soetkoekies
masala	peach leather	somoosa
masoor/mussoor	pekelaar	soojee
-meal	pens-en-pootjies	somp
kuni meal	perskesmeer	sosaties
mealie meal	pickled fish	sour porridge
mealie	[pikkie]	sousboontjies
green mealie	pit	souskluitjies
kaboe mealies	denne/dannepit	sout-
mealie rice	poffertjie	soutappelkoos
mebos	puri	southappie
meelbol	putu	soutribbetjie
melksnysels	rations, 'rats'	spek
melktert	ribbetjie	spek strips
met(h)i	braairibbetjie	stamp mealies
mielie pap	soutribbetjie	stormja(g)er
milt	rooibostee	

stywepap	teewater konfyt	vleispastei
sugar beans	toutjies	waatlemoenkonfyt
suikerbrood	toutjiesvleis	waterblommetjie bredie
suurdeeg	trek-ox	wateruintjie bredie
suurpap	treksel	wors
table butter	tuj	boerewors
tammeletjie	uitloop	yellow rice
tammeletjie rol(1)	[veldkos]	zeekoe spek
-tea-	verkoek(ie)	
bush tea	-vleis-	
rooibos. ^{tea} /tee	braaivleis	
tea water/teewater.	pap-en-vleis	

Note: Spelling forms of Indian words are variable: one or two variants have been given where available.

8. Drinking and Smoking

This category contains the names, standard and colloquial, of different types of liquor, home-brewed or bottled, African and European.

Terms from this group connected with the liquor trade (bottle store, off sales, canteen, shebeen, stokvel, beerhall, pagter) appear also at 30. Trade, Mining and Law, and most of the liquor containers or measures here are also at 24. Monetary Units and Measures, from the massive anker, leaguer, stukvat and aum to the bomb, straight, half jack, scale and nipinyane.

The vocabulary of over-indulgence of which most is at 16. Health, Moods, Medicines and Witchcraft (nadors, babela(a)s, horries and reg-maker) and of drinking (gesondheid!, sundowner, sluk, sopie and dop) all have a place here, as do odd items concerned with brewing (uitloop, mtombo, kareemoer).

Smoking, from boer tobacco, Magaliesberg or twak, in a calabash pipe to the stompies and surreptitious skuifie/skyfie of the schoolboy, and the African gwaai, is reflected here, as is some of the terminology of smoking connected with the drug culture (dagga, insangu, boom, malpitte, dagga pips, dagga zolls).

[Note: most names of African-type drinks and African names for European-style liquor will also be found at 2. African World.]

advokaat	canteen
aeroplane	~ keeper
ai-ai	~ wine
anker	Cape
aum	~ brandy
abelas	~ wine
bangie(s)	~ smoke
Bantu beer	Constantia
Barberton	steen ~
beerhall	Frontignac ~
bi-ah	red, white ~
boer	~ wine
r ~ brandy	cooldrink
~ tobacco	dagga
~ wine/wyn	~ zolls
bomb	~ pips
boom	~ smoking
~ tea	dop(pie)
bottle store	dop brandy
brandewyn	dop-en-dam
brandywine	gavini/govini
buchu brandy	gesondheid
calabash pipe	gologo

govini	pontac
green/groen mamba	puza
gwaai	reggie
ha-ja	regmaker
half jack	scale
hanepoot	sgomfaan
heuningbier	shebeen
honeybeer	~ king
horries	~ queen
insangu	~ party
jack, half	~ trade
Jan Groentjie	shimiyaan
Jerepigo, white, red	skokkiaan
kaffir beer	skuifie
kaffir tobacco	skyfie
kareemoer	sluk
K.B.	sopie
Kimberley Club	square face
kirimoer	steen
kudu milk	stokvel
K.W.V.	stokvel party
leaguer	tickey line/tiekie line stokvel
leting	big time stokvel
madolo	stompie
Magaliesberg (tobacco)	straight
mahewu	stukvat
mahog(a)	sundowner
maiza	tears, (queen's)
malpitte	tickey beer
mampoer	tiger's milk
marula/maroela beer	tot system
moer, karee	tshwala/tywala
mqomboti	twak
mtombo	uitloop
~ mmela	'underground'
nadors	utywala
nagmaal wyn/wine	vaaljapie
ndambola	vaatjie
nipinyana/e	van der Hum
off sales	voorloop
~ department	witblits
orange wine	zoll, 1, 2.
pagter	
peach brandy	
pinotage	

9. Exclamations and Interjections

This category contains the common exclamations of surprise, pain, disbelief, derision, sympathy, disapproval, distaste and warning used among all races in South Africa.

Included are forms of greeting and farewell, kom binne, pula, go well, stay well, cheers, hamba kahle, sala kahle (huis toe), ry versigtig, mooi loop, totsiens: of savage dismissal, hamba, loop, voetsek, and of jubilation, Vrystaat, nog 'n piep, amandla, mindae.

Not strictly interjections are the question tags - perhaps more properly 'interpolations' - nè?, not so?, is it?, isn't it? and the words and phrases used for emphasis as true as God, so wragtig, I'm telling you, so waar, nogal. Some probably originate in blasphemies (Magtig, allemagtig, jislaaik, Yessus, Here) but no 'swear words' as such are listed here.

aandag	is it?	shame
ag/ach	isn't it?	sies
aikona	ja	siestog
allemagtig	ja-nee	sis
allewêreld	jislaaik	skande
amandla	joking, you're	skɛi snik
bakgat	kahle	so waar
bliksem	kom binne	so wragtie waar
cheers	loop	stadig
dankie	maak gou	stay well
eina	magtig/magtie	suka
enkosi	man	telling you, I'm
foeitog	mawo	Tixo
foot, his	Mayibuye Afrika	tjiers
footsack	mindae	totsiens
ga	mooi loop	tough tackie
gesondheid	nè	true as God
go well	nee, ja -	tula
hamba	[nkosi]	twak
hamba kahle	nogal	usutu
hau	nog 'n piep	voe(r)tsek
Here	not so?	voet, se
hey	[ntshebe]	Vrystaat
hokaai	oppas	wag 'n bietjie
hoor hoor	opskud	weg is ek
hou moed	pas op	wragtig
hou links	pula	wragtie waar, so
hou regs	ry versigtig	yebo
hou jou bek	sa	yes-no
huistoe	salani kahle	Yessus/as
inkosi	se voet	yu/yo

10. Expressions, Idioms and Slang

This category contains an assemblage of colloquial and slang items, including some expressions which are carried over, in translation, from Afrikaans. There are also slang or colloquial modes of address or reference some of which are at 1. Modes of Address and 19. Human Types and a number of phrases which are linguistically 'mixed' e. g. finish(ed) and klaar, moenie panic nie.

Apart from a list of translated expressions, mostly from Afrikaans, which precedes the full alphabetical list, there has been no attempt at classification of what appears to be too heterogeneous to be profitably divided.

Translations or transliterations

adjective with infinitive	hope so, don't	plan, to make a
all two	howl	play-play
already	is it?	propped
-and-them	isn't it?	rather
bad friends	joking, you're	rather very
bell		
bite one's teeth	just now	ride
* borrow	lend	ride flat
busy		
* busy with	make a plan	road, in the
* call		
can't complain	must	road, out of the
come right	negative, uses of	scandal
come to hand	nerves	scare
come/came there	on my/your etc.	shine, through
cotch	works on my/your	show through
deadstill	etc.	small little
doesn't want to	never	so a little
drink	no	so, or
excuse me	not so	so long
family	now	so size
far	now now	splinter new
farm, the	old fashioned	standpoint
farm with	Old Year's Night	* stay well
forget		
full of	only	stick
give	on the moment	stick away
goodie	otherside	stick fast
* go well	otherwise	stick on
have to	pack in	still
hell in	pick out	sweet
hellout	pick up weight	* takes me up to
him, that's	place	take out
Holland	place of, in	telling you, I'm

thank you	tiger's milk	wish you, to
them, and-	tramp	with
thing, my	tramped, to get	come with
third person (oblique) address	true as God, as	go with
through the face	wait on	* worry
throw	want to	youth, the
throw dead	don't want to	
throw wet	doesn't want to	
throw wet	-water	
throw with	sugar water	
	jelly water etc.	

* from African languages

ace, on my	bergie	come out
adjective with infinitive	bioscope	come right
Africa, for	bite one's teeth	come/came there
Afrix ^x	bleddy/ie	come to hand
agteros	blerrie	Coolie Christmas
alles sal regkom	blikkiesdorp	cotch
alles van die beste	bliksem	cronky
all two	blikskottel	crunchie
already	boetie-boetie	dag
-and-them	bof	-dakkies
arvie /arvey	bog	dankie
baasboets ^x	bohaai	darem
bad friends	boom (dagga)	deadstill
baie	borrow	derms
baie dankie	bosbouers	deurmekaar
bakgat	boulder	dik
baklei	brak(kie)	dikbek
bakore	bundu bashing	dikkop
bangbroek	bundu basher	dinges/ dingus
basela	bushman hunting	dip
Bay, the	bush mechanic	doer
bek	busy	doesn't want to
dikbek	busy with	don't want to
grootbek	call	dom
haasbek	came there	domboek
langbek	can't complain	domkop
skinderbek	cheers	dompas
beneek(te)	choc	donder
bell	chommie	doodgooi
Berg, the	clapped	

dop	gopse	kaffir-
doppie	go well	kaffir dog
dorp	gramadoelas	kaffir fowl
dosh	greenie	kaffir sheep
draai, Kaapse	grootbek	kaffir truck
drag	grootpraat	white kaffir
drink	haasbek	kaffir work
druk	hamba kahle	kahle, hamba
get drukked	hairy (back)	kak
Dutchman	hap(pie)	kamma
dwaal	hardup	Kar(r)oo coal
Eendrag Maak Mag	have to	kas
excuse me	hell in, the	kiewietjiebene
family	hell out	Kimberley Train
far	helluva, hell of a	kinders
farm, the	here	klaar, finish(ed) and
fat tackies	him, that's	klap
fiemies	Hindoo	kleinhuisie
fies, vies	hoepelbeen	kleinserig
finish(ed) and klaar	Holland	klomp(ie)
foeitog	hope so, don't	kragdadig
for Africa	horries	krans athlete
forget	hou links	kransie
fossick	howl	krev
Free State-	huis-toe	kroesi e/kroeskop
Free State Coal,	inspan (fig.)	kwaai vriende
[Free State micro-	indaba	kwaal
meter screw]	is it?	laatlammetjie
Free State nails ¹	isn't it?	langbek
full of	ja	lap
fundi	jaap	lapa
gammat(jie)	jabroer	lappie legs
g(r)amadoelas	jags	lawaaï, skop
gedoente	jakkalstrou	lekker
geelbek	Jan Company	lekker lewe
gemors	Joeys ^x	lend
gentoo	joking, you're	loer
give	jol	loshotnot
goef	jong	maar
goeters	just now	make a plan
go garshly	kaal	mali
	kaalgat	maningi
	kaalvoet	mat
gogga	Kaapse draai	mealie cruncher
gom	kaffer-	middelmannetjie
goodie	kafferbrak	
gooi	kafferpak	

1. [Free State sandwich].

mindae	op	poegaai
moan	op die kop	Pretoria
moenie panic nie	opskop	pronk
moenie worry nie	opskud	propped pundus
moera	[ostrich farmer]	rather
moerava / moer of a	otherside	rather very
mompara	otherwise	reggie
monkey's wedding	ou	ride flat
mooi loop	ou jokes	right, not
mōre is nog 'n dag	oulap	rinderpest, before the
morsdood	out of town	road, in the
mos	overseas	road, out of the
mossie	owerheid	[rock]spider
dead as a mossie	pack in 1 and 2	rope
to live on mealie pap and mossies	pack out 1 and 2	ruk
muhle	padkamper	ry versigtig
muishond	padkos	[s'arvie]
nuuskierige muis- hond	pampoen	scandal
munt	pampoenkop	scare
mush(e)	pap	schlenter
must	papbroek	scurvy
nè	papsnoek	se voet
negative, uses of	peanuts	shine through
nerves, on my/your	pelile	show through
nerves, works on my/ your	pellie, ou pellie blue	siestog
neuk	peperkorrels	sis on you
never	peppercorn hair	skaap
niks	pick up weight	skeef
no, uses of	pick out	skefie
nogal	pik	skel out
not so?	P.K.	skelm
now	place	skepsel
now-now	place of, in	skiet-en-donder
oes	plak	skiets
off	plan, make a	skinder
oke/okie	plank	skinderbek
old fashioned	plat	skit/skut
Old Year's Night	platsak	skop
omgekrap	platteland	skop lawaai
only	play-play	skop, skiet-en-donder
on the moment	play sport	skrik
oorlams	play white	skyfie /skuifie
oorskiet	plus minus	slap
		slap chips

slapgat	stomp	tough tackie	
slat	stompie	tramped, to get	
slim	pick up stompies	trassie	
slim kerel	stops	tronk	
slim Piet etc.	storosha	true as God	
sluk	strandloper	try for white	
smaak	sukkel	twak	
small little	swak	up country	
smeerlap	sweet	vabond	
smouse	taai	Van der Merwe	
snaaks	tackies	vasbyt	
[snikkie]	fat tackies	vat-en-sit	
snoep	tough tackie	vatterig	
snot-en-trane	tackie lips	verdomde	
so a little	takes me up to	verdriet, dronk	
so long	take out	verkramp/theid	
bye-bye so long	tamaai	verlep	
so, or	tannie, ticket	verlig/theid	
sommer	telling you, I'm	verneuk	
so size	thank you	verneuker	
South West	them, and-	verneukery	
so waar	thick	vetsak	
span	thing, my	vies	
speel, spiel	third person (oblique)	voetsak, in the year	
spider, rock-	address	vrek	
splinter new	through the face	vroetel	
spog	throw	vrot	
spoorie	throw dead	vroteier	
sport, to play	throw wet	waai	
-stan	throw with	wag 'n bietjie	
standpoint	tickets	wait on	
stay	tickey	want to	
stay well	long tickey	-water	
steeks	sticky tickey	sugar water etc.	
Stellenbosch	two bricks/half a brick	jelly water	
stemvee	and a tickey high	vinegar water etc.	
stick	tiger's milk	weg is ek	
stick fast	tjorrie	wish you, to	
stick away	snorktjor	witbaas	
stick on	[knortjor]	with	
still	tjommie	to come with	
stoef	toe	to go with	
stoepsitter	toe maar	take with	
stoep talk	tom	woes	yl
stokkies draai	tot siens	wor rk	youth, the
	totty	worry	zoll, 1 & 2
	totty pink	wragtig	Zoo Train
			zut

11. Farming

The vocabulary of farming in South Africa is a large one. What follows is a representative but by no means exhaustive treatment of this field. For convenience the material is subdivided into several sections.

(1) The first, stock farming, contains the terms used for domestic animals and birds, which in South Africa includes the ostrich, and varieties of cattle and sheep. There are also terms used in connection with wool and mutton production, cattle raising, and the problem of how many of either the veld will carry (animal unit, large or small stock unit, -stocking rate, stock reduction scheme, S.S.U., veld burning, veld reared), and the identification marks which enable the farmer to keep track of his own (swallow ear, winkelhaak, stomp swaelstert, skey-ear). The subsection gives the names of some of the many diseases which attack cattle, horses, sheep and goats.

(2) The second section, Veld, Fodder, Pastures and Grazing, is closely related to the vocabulary of stock farming. Most important, perhaps, are the veld-types and the vocabulary concerned with veld management and the conservation of grazing in a country usually short of water. Here too are names of various types of pasture grasses, indigenous or planted, and those of certain nutritious, usually indigenous, bush. The subsection Plant Pests gives the names of bushes or other plants which trouble the farmer in any of several ways: those poisonous to stock such as bitterbos, gifboom, dubbeltjie, dunsiektebossie, krimpsiektebos, nentabossie; those which encroach upon grazing veld in the process of 'plant migration', or in other ways destroy it (rhenosterbos (boeboes), Port Jackson Willow, steekgras, katdoring, swarthaak, wattle): those which are proclaimed weeds, the presence of which must be reported (hakea, jointed cactus, boetebos, satansbos) and the dreaded rooiblom, mieliegif or witchweed which is parasitic upon mealies.

(3) Building and Fencing. This section contains the names of some of the buildings or other structures to be found on a farm (farm school, storosha, struis, volkshuisie, packhouse, waenhuis, afdak, skuur): the werf containing the homestead and outbuildings, the opstal or improvements: the enclosures of various kinds (lands, camp, kraals, hoks) and the terms pertaining to the fences which enclose some of them (camp off, dropper, doringdraad, jackal-proof fencing, concertina gate). Odd terms here are the stellasie for drying biltong etc., the breipal for brei/breying riems, Boeresaal which is normally in a town or village, the State-owned prison-farm and the farm prison or gaol previously kept for convict labour (bandiete).

(4) Agriculture. This section contains some of the vocabulary of the cultivation of crops, soil types, harvest, measures, payment and money; and the names of certain crops such as babala, mealies, manna, kaffircorn.

Cultivation: saaidam, dryland farming, irrigation farm, land (mealie land, wheat land etc.), skoffle(r), sleper, braak, morgen, windskans, Vaaljapie.

Soil etc.: brak, bush soil, sand veld, vleiland, vleigro(u)nd, turf, black turf.

Measures: bucket, bag (bags per morgen), muid, pocket.

Money: Land Bank, voorskot, agterskot, middeliskot, tot system, togt system.

(5) Water. This concerns water sources such as fountain, fontein, borehole; water catchment - afloop, dam, saaidam, vleiland; irrigation - lead water, furrow, ride on water, sloot, sluit; and rainfall- worthless mistrain or paraffin, or the results of heavy rain causing dongas and erosion.

(6) Pests: Insects, animals and birds which prey on crops or other animals.

(7) Plant Diseases.

(8) Wagons: A few terms concerning wagons and draught animals, many of which are still in use on farms today: for more of these see 31. Travel and Vehicles.

(9) People: a few terms for people on farms, masters or labour.

(1) Stock farming

Africander, 1 and 2	fence creeper	queen
afterox	game ranching	ridgeback
animal unit	hamel	riem
beast	full mouth hamel	kalfriem
blinkhaar	slaughter hamel	vangriem
boerbul	wissel hamel	ronderib
boergoat	hans-	salted
boerperd	hanslammetjie etc.	skey ear
Bonsmara	hansie	skimmel
brak(kie)	Inkone cattle	blouskimmel
buck	kapater	rooiskimmel
Cape sheep	karakul	[skoffler oxen]
cut	keer <u>vb.</u>	skut
donkey duck	koekoek	skut vee
Dormer	Kolbroek kraal <u>vb.</u>	skut kraal
Dorper	'kuku'	slyt sheep
Drakensberger	locks, lox	small stock unit
Fatherland cattle	Namaqua sheep	sny
fat lamb	Ngoni/Nkona cattle	steekhaar
fat lamb production		steeks
fat-tailed sheep	ostrich	stock

stock fair	tollie	veld cattle
stock reduction- scheme	trassie	off the veld
stock unit, large/ small	trek-ox	veld reared
SSU	trek sheep	veld resting
stocking rate	tripple <u>vb.</u>	volbek
stomp	Vaderland cattle	voorbok
stump	vasmaker ooi/ewe	winkelhaak
swaelstert	vee	wissel
swallow ear	veeplaas	unwisseled
sweep	veld	wissel hamel
'tail truck'	veld burning	Zulu cattle

Animal Diseases

autumn fever	heartwater	nenta
biliary	jaagsiekte	opblaaskrimpsiekte
black leg	kaalsiekte	paardesiekte
black quarter	krimpsiekte	[papias]
bloedpens	dunkrimpsiekte	quarter evil
blue tongue	opblaaskrimp- siekte	redwater
brandsiekte		[rinderpest]
dikkop / geel dikkop		salted / unsalted
domsiekte	lamsiekte	snotsiekte
dunkrimpsiekte	longsiekte	sponssiekte
gall sickness	lung sickness	stiff sickness
galsiekte	meltsiekte	styfsiekte / stywesiekte
geilsiekte	milt sickness	three days' sickness
gifsiekte	nagana	tulp poisoning
		veld sickness

(2) Veld, Fodder, Pastures and Grazing

American aloe	gebroken veld	quick grass
beaten out	grazing farm	red grass
bergveld	-hay	redwater veld
bitterbosveld	heartwater veld	Rhodes grass
bloubos	kaalblad/blaar	rolbos
blue bush	Kar(oo) bush	rooigras
brakbos	Kar(oo) encroach- ment	sandveld
bushveld		skaapplaas
camp	khannabos	soetgras
grazing camp	kikuyu	spekboom
veld camp	kweekgras	sweet grass
eaten out	mealie stalks	sweet veld
elephant's food	mieliestronke	teff grass
gallsickness veld	mixed veld	thorn veld
ganna	mopane veld	tramped out
garingboom	oulandsgras	two (toa) grass
	plant migration	

veld	veld types	rooigrasveld
veld damage	berg veld	soetveld
veld deterioration	bushveld	suurveld
veld hay	gebroken veld	sweetveld
veld management	grass veld	thorn veld
veld reinforcement	Kar(r)oo veld	vlakteveld
veld replacement	mixed veld	vleiveld
veld resting	mopane veld	vleigras
veld burning	ranching veld	voer
 <u>Plant Pests</u>		
besembos	khaki bush	rooikrans willow
bitterbos	khaki weed	satansbos
'boeboes'	katdoring	[skilpadbos, vygie]
boetebos	Karoo thorn	steekgras
driedoring	krimpsiektebossie	stick grass
dubbeltjie	mieligif	styfsiektebossie
dunsiektebossie	nentabossie	swarthaak
duwweltjie	plant migration	tulp
gifboom	Port Jackson willow	red tulp
hakea	proclaimed weed	blue tulp etc.
jointed cactus	r(h)enosterbos	wattle
kakiebos	rooibloom	windmakerbos
		witchweed
 <u>(3) Building and Fencing</u>		
afdak	improved	skutkraal
apron	improvements	stellasie
baken	jackal (proof)	storosha
beacon	fencing	struis
[Boeresaal]	kraal	tamboekie grass
breipaal	cattle kraal	unimproved
brei riems	goat kraal	veekraal
camp ⁿ	sheep kraal etc.	veeplaas
camp (off) vb.	morgen	veld camp
concertina gate	opstal	verandah
doringdraad	packhouse	volkshuisie
dropper	plaas/plaats	waenhuis
farm	place	werf
farm school	[prison farm]	windskans
farm prison	schuur	
hok, fowl, calf etc.	skuur	
house camp	skut	
house kraal		

(4) Agriculture

agterskot	[loan place	Rooi Els
babala	loan farm]	saaidam
bag	manna	sandveld
boer pumpkin	boer manna	skoffle, skoffler
braak <u>vb</u>	kaffir manna	skoffler oxen
braaking	red manna	skutgeld
brak	white manna	sleper
bucket	yellow manna	trapvloer
bush soil	mealie	togt system
dryland	mealie pip	tot system
dryland farming	middelskot	turf soil
farm with	morgen	black turf
irrigation farm	muid	Vaaljapie
kaffircorn	muid sack	vinestalk
land	opper	vleigro(u)nd
land camp	ouland	vleiland
mealie land	pocket	voorskot
wheat land	potwana	windskans
Land Bank	[request place	
	request farm]	

(5) Water

afloop	fountain	run, veld
borehole	furrow	saaidam
borehole water	irrigation furrow	sloot
dam	irrigation farm	sluit
dam scoop	lead water	vlei
donga	mistrain	vleiland
erosion donga	paraffin	water, ride on
[fontein]	ride on water	

(6) Pests

bont tick	koringvoël/vreter	tampan
brommer	mealie rusper	tick
fly, the	mealie stalk borer	blue tick
lammervanger	[papias]	bont tick
lice/louse	rooikat	red tick
kalander	rusper	tsetse fly
Kar(oo) caterpillar	sandveld grain worm	wattle looper
		withalskraai

(7) Plant Diseases

kroesblaar	roes(t)	tulpbrand
kromnek	rust	vaalblaar

(8) Wagons

after ox	scotch cart	strop
disselboom	scotch cart oxen	sweep
inspan	skey	trek_ox
kneehalter	skey yoke	voorslag
nekstrop	skoffler	waenhuis
outspan	skoffler oxen	yokeskey
sail	span	yoke pin

(9) People

bywoner	togt boy	vee boer
poor white	togt labourer	volk
stock farmer	trekboer	volkies
[cheque book farmer / stoepsitter.]		

12. 'Fish'

The 'fish' included in this category are not in any way scientifically grouped: marine, fresh-water fish, crustaceans and shellfish alike are presented in the alphabetical order in which they will be found in the text. Similarly edible and non-edible species are not distinguished from one another. These names are given here simply because they have become part of the language we speak and read, not because they denote species of any particular importance. The scientific names of fish in the main text have been taken from the meticulously indexed work of Professor and Mrs J. L. B. Smith, and from the list of names of fresh-water fish of Southern Africa by Dr P.B.N. Jackson of Rhodes University.

alfkoord	galjoen	maasbanker
alikleukel	geelbek	marsbanker
angler	geelstert	Miss Lucy
arikreukel	gieliemientjie	moggel
baardman	'gogga'	monk
bagger/bagre	grunter	mooinoientjie
bamboofish	pignose grunter	moonfish
bamvoosie	spotted grunter	moonie/ey
biskop	striped grunter etc.	musselcracker
blaasop	ha(a)rder	musselcrusher
blacktail	halfkoord	ollycrook
bont dagerad	hamerkop(haai)	paling
bont paling	hammerhead (shark)	pampelmoes
bully	hottentot	panga
Cape lady	jacopever	perlemoen
Cape salmon	janbruin	peuloog
catfish	Kaapenaar	pignose grunter
chokka	kabeljou	platanner
chor chor	karanteen	poenskop
crayfish	katonkel	Prodigal son
dageraad/da(g)eraad	katunker	redbait
daggerhead/heart	klipfish/vis(sie)	redfish
damba	klipkous	(red) Roman
dassie	knorhaan	reds
dikbek(kie)	kob	rietbul
dikkop	kolstert	rooi aas
dikoog	kurper	seacat/seekat
doppie	banded kurper	seevarkie
elf(t)	blue kurper etc.	seventyfour siffie
flatty	kreef	silver
Frans Madame	ladyfish	silverfish
French Madam	leervis	silvie

skipjack	stompneus	tshokka
skipper	rooi/red stompneus	vaalhaai
snoek	wit/white stompneus	-vis
China snoek	streepdassie	vundu
soldier	streepha(a)rder	wildeperd
spotted grunter	stre(e)pie	wildevis
springer	tasselfish	yellowbelly
steenbras	tiger	yellowfish
stinkfish	tjokka	yellowtail
stockfish	tjortjor	zebra
stokvis/fish	toby(fish)	
stompie		

13. Flowers.

Included here are only a few of the flowers of South Africa - only those the common names of which have become part of the English vocabulary of this country. Most of these are wild flowers but a few terms listed below are the South African names for familiar garden flowers of Europe, e. g. Christmas flower (hydrangea), katjeepering (gardenia), gesiggie (pansy), leeubekkie (antirrhinum - snapdragon.) The botanical names used in the text have been taken from C. A. Smith's The Common Names of South African Plants, the 1966 edition by E. Percy Phillips and Estelle van Hoepen.

aandblom	Christmas flower	Namaqua(land)
aasblom	crane flower	marigold
Afrikaner	disa	nerina
brown Afrikaner	blue/blou disa	oupa-en / met-sy-pyp
pink Afrikaner	mountain disa	painted lady
red Afrikaner	red disa	piesangblom
almanac, kaffir	everlasting	piglily
avondbloem	geel-	Pride of -
babiana	*goud(s)blom	Pride of de Kaap
Barberton daisy	*gesiggie	Pride of India
begging hand	gousblom	Pride of Table
berglelie	heuningblom	Mountain
blom/bloem	kaaimansblom	Pride of Fransch Hoek
aandblom	kaffir-	protea
aasblom	kaffir almanac	giant protea
avondblom	kaffir honeysuckle	king protea
botterblom	kalkoentjie	-pypie
gousblom	katjeepering	aandpypie
seeroogblom etc.	leeubekkie	rooipypie
blou-	-lelie	red hot poker
blouaalwee	berglelie	rhebokblom
blou disa	blouwaterlelie	rooibloom
bloutulp etc.	boslelie	sandveld lelie/lily
blushing bride	brandlelie	sandvygies
bobbejaantjie	sandveldlelie	seeroogblom/lelie
bokbaai vygie	seerooglelie	sewejaartjie
bokhorinkie	misrybol	skaanblom
boslelie	moederkappie	sneeublom
botterblom	mombakkiesblom	soldier
bottle brush	mooinoientjie	soutvygie
brandlelie	Namaqua(land)	sugarbush
Cape honeysuckle	Namaqua(land) daisy	suikerbos
chinchinchee	Namaqualand gous-	tecoma
chink	blom	torch lily

tulp
bloutulp
rootulp etc.
varklelie/blom
vlei lily

vygie
bokbaaiwygie
muiswygie
sandwygie etc.
waboom

[waggon wood]
watereendjie
yesterday, today and
tomorrow

14. Fruits and Vegetables

This small category includes fruit and vegetables both cultivated and wild. As in the case of the flowers some are indigenous names of indigenous species and others are South African names for European species: na(a)rtjie (tangerine), spanspek (cantaloupe), pampelmoes (shaddock), mispel (medlar). In several cases the names used in this country are also found in other parts of the world: the widely used corruption of avocado, 'alligator pear', bringal used also in India for the aubergine or eggplant, and pa(w)paw (papaya) used in North America and Jamaica, as is lady finger for a small banana.

alligator pear	-kaffer, kaffir	pampoen
amadumbi	kaffir beans	pa(w)paw
amatungulu	kaffir corn	patat, borrie
anyswortel	kaffir fig	pinotage
boer pumpkin	kaffergrondboontjie	pit (denne)
borrie-	kaffir groundnut	pomelo
borrie patat	kaffir orange	rissie
borrie quince	kaffir plum	(m)sobosobo
bringal	kafferwaatlemoen	soetriet
butter chilli	kaffir watermelon	sour fig
calabash	karree berries	spa(a)nspek
Cape gooseberry	karkoer	squash
dhunia (Indian parsley)	Kei apple	gem squash
Dingaan's apricot	klapper	hubbard squash
drogie	koekoemakranka	suurvy
droog-my-keel	kukumakranka	sweet cane
gaukum/ghokum	lady finger	taaipit/pip
gem squash	mabela	taloviya
ghaap / guaap	madumbi	t'samma (melon)
green mealie	makataan	turksvy
guarrie bessies/ berries	maroela/marula berries	uintjies, [hotnots]
hanepoot	mealie	waatlemoen, kaffer
Hotnotskool	green mealie	waterblommetjie
Hottentot('s) cabbage	kaboe mealie(s)	wateruintjie
Hottentot('s) fig	mispel	wild fig
imfe	monkey orange	wooden orange
izindlubu	na(a)rtjie	
Jugo Beans	pampelmoes	

15. Games, Dances and Diversions

This category covers many of the lighter sides of life and has for convenience been broken up, as have several others, into smaller classes. A complete alphabetised list follows these.

Active games and terms pertaining to them.

Outdoors: boeresport, bok bok, bollemakiesie, vb jol, play sport, kleilatjie, ghoen, jukskei, skei, kennetjie, skop die blik, kick the tin, skollollie, skilpadtrek, tok-tokkie, 'Bok, foefie/fuffie slide, vroteier, abba, ruk, Protea, Leopard, Springbok, Springbok colours etc.. Indoors: donkermannetjie, ystermannetjie. * kussingslaan.
Toys: cattie, mik, lackey, lap pop, dolos, kleios, tol, tok-tokkie, woer-woer, kleilatjie, vb jol. Tops: tol, pik, sailorboy, stinky, egg, home-made. Marbles: alie, ghoen, ironie, (steelie), yakkie, glassie, queen, sodie, bottlie, tollie, yakkie, knickerje, knikker, vb steek.
Carnival: Old Year's Night, Tweede Nuwe Jaar, Coons, Coon Carnival, moppies, liedjies, mombakkies, jool, bokjol, [bok, a]

Rowdiness: opskop, skop lawaai.

Humour: Van der Merwe, Gammat, Gammatjie taal, Meraai, Bushveld Ben, ou joke, [moppie].

Indoor Amusements: biocafe, bioscope, S.A.B.C., Springbok Radio, koffiehuis, skiet and donder movies/theatre/literature, snot-en-trane drama/literature, comic book, tickey evening, tickey drive, vingertrek, karem. Cards: klab(ber)ja(a)s, klawerjas, Zoll, [stokvel and shebeen parties see (2).]

Music and Songs: Jan Pierewiet, Jannie met die Hoepelbeen, Kimberley Train, Suikerbos, liedjies, ghommalielidjies, moppies, boerelidjies, boereorke, ramkie(tjie), vastrap music.

Dancing and Social gatherings: Volkspele, sheepskin dance, velskoen, opskud, opskud-en-uitkap, tickey-draai, vastrap, braai, braaivleis, bokjol, askoek slaan.

African music, dancing and instruments: malombo, malombo drums, mbaqanga, township jazz, kwela, penny whistle, ngoma dancing, gumboot dancing, ngoma, gorah, gom gom, gubu, marimba, mbira, calabash piano, Mashona piano, [ramkie(tjie)]. Social gatherings: beerdrink, stokvel party, big time stokvel, tickey line stokvel, shebeen party.

Love and Lovers:

Courting: opsit, opsitting, opsitbank, opsitkers/candle, sit up, vry, vryer, vryery, vryhoek(ie), sny, [boeresport] voetjie-voetjie, [gooi]
Endearments: bokkie, skat, my thing, [bok, kêrel, doedie.]

abba	jool	Protea
alie (blood)	jukskei	queen ¹
askoek slaan	kaffir piano	rankie
beerdrink	karem	rankietjie
biocafe	kennetjie	ru(c)k
bioscope	kêrel	S.A.B.C.
blik, skop die	kick the tin	sailorboy
boere-	Kimberley Train	shebeen
boereliedjies	klab(ber)ja(a)s	shebeen party
boeremusiek	klawerjas	shebeen queen
boereorkes	kleilatjie	sheepskin
boeresport	kleios	sit up
Bok	knickerje	skat
bok, a	knikker	skei
bok-bok	koffiehuis	skiet and donder
bokjol	kussingslaan	skilpad trek
bokkie	kwela	skilpad loop
bollemakiesie	lackey	skollollie
book, comic	lap pop	skop die blik
braai	lawaaï	skop, skiet and donder ^x
braaivleis	Leopard	snot-en-trane drama/ literature/theatre
Bushveld Ben	liedjie	
calabash piano	malombo	
cattie	malombo drums	sny
coon	malombo sound	Springbok
Coon Carnival	mambakkies	Springbok radio
doedie	marimba	Springbok sport (colours, blazer etc.)
dolos	Mashona piano	
donkermannetjie	mbaqanga	steek
egg	mbira	stinky
foefie/fuffie slide	Meraai	stokvel
Gammatjie	mik	stokvel, big time
Gammatjie taal	mombakkies	stokvel party
Gammatjie jokes	moppie	stokvel play stokvel, tickey-line
ghoen	ngoma	stokkie
ghomma	ngoma dancing	Suikerbos
ghommalielidjies	Nuwe Jaar, Tweede	thing, my
glassie ¹	Old Year's Night	tickey -/tiekie-
gooi	opsit	tickey-aand
gom-gom	opsitting	tickey.draai
gorah	opsitkers/candle	tickey.drive
gubu	opsitbank	tickey-line
gumboot dance	opskop	toktokkie 1 and 2
homemade	opskud-en-uitkap	tol
ironie (steely/ie)	ou joke	tollie
jakkie	penny whistle	township jazz
Jan Pierewiet	pik	[trek fishing]
Jannie-met-die hoepel-been		
jol	[play sport]	Tweede Nuwejaar

1. Also bottlie, sodie.

Van der Merwe	vingertrek	vryery
Van der Merwe jokes	voetjie-voetjie	vryhoek
Van der Merwe stories	volkspele(r)	woer-woer
vastrap	vroteier	yakkie
vastrap music	vry	ystermannetjie
velskoen	vryer	zoll

16. Health, Moods, Medicine and Witchcraft

As in the foregoing category (15) the diverse fields covered by this group of terms are for convenience divided under different headings, followed by an overall alphabetical list of the whole.

Words and phrases pertaining to states of mind and body: on my nerves, dwaalie, benoud(heid), kwaai, fiemies, clapped, moeg, fris, naar, works on my/your nerves, slap, oes, pap, poegaai, nadors,abelaas, dronkverdriet, cotch/kotch (vb), omgekrap, deurmekaar, jags, fies/vies, the hell in, woes, not right, kamma-, overmass, swak, morsdood, snot-en-trane, verlep, kleinsierig, haasbek, langbek, dikbek, stoef, skrik, fall pregnant, veld fever, trekgees, on boep, eina.

Personal Appearance and Characteristics: bakore, boep, beer boep, bokbaard, hoepelbeen, kiewietjie-bene, lappie-legs, kroeskop, kroes, kroesie, korrelkop, kuif/kyf, peperkorrels, peppercorns, peppercorn hair, haasbek, tackie lips, kaalvoet, kaalgat, takhaar, moffie, trassie, witkoppie, vl, skeeloog: dom, dik, toe, thick, parmantig, snoep, bry/bray/brey.

Ailments and Diseases: apricot sickness, appelkoossiekte, [benoudheid], chorb, horries, kwale, lekker-jeuk, sinkings, skiets, stops, -siekte, redwater, [veld fever], veld sores, pampoentjies, white sore throat, [sandworm], [jigger], stick on vb,

Anatomy: milt, derm, gorrel, [Hottentot apron] pinkie, pundus.

Witches, Witchcraft and the Supernatural: bones, throw the bones, bula party, smell(ing) out, dolos, herbalist, inyanga, witchdoctor, sangoma, uhlaka, impundulu bird, lightning bird, mamlambo, muti, muti man, muti shop, tikoloshe/tokoloshe, tagati, mafufunyane/a (ufufnyana), rainmaker, rain queen, ritual murder, spook, goëlery, toor, toordokter/doctor, toorgoed, [slangmeester, slangsteentjie, snake stone], [slaams, slamaaier, jumat].

Organisations: Harry's Angels, Noodhulpliga

Medicines, Drugs and Herbs: aloe juice, * bangalala, * benoudheid-druppels, boegoe/buchu, dassieboegoe, boom, boom tea, * borsdruppels, buchu, * buchu leaves, * buchu brandy, buck fat, cancer bush, castor oil bush, dagga, dassiespis, * doepa, * doepa olie, drogies, droog-my-keel, * duiwelsdrek, * Dutch medicines, guarri tea/tee, hing, hotnots tee, hottentot's tea, * huisapteek, insangu, * jalappoeier, kaffir tea, kankerbos, kersbos, klip-sweet, kukumankranka, kukumankranka brandy, kannawortel, hotnotskougoed, mafuta, malpitte, * Old Dutch Medicines, * ^{potat salt} reggie, * regmaker, rooibostee/tea, seeroogbossie, Satan's dung, [slangsteentjie, snake stone], stinkblaar, sweat leaf, sweetkruid, -tee, guarri-, bush-, bossie-, hotnots-, kaffir-, rooibos-, treksel, * turlington, veld remedy, * versterkdruppels, wolwegif.

* Patent Medicines

aloe juice	eina	kroesie
appelkoossiekte	fall pregnant	kwaai
apricot sickness	fiemies	kwaal, kwale
babelas various sp.	fris	langbek
bakore	[ghwarrie]	lappie-legs
bangalala	goëlery	lekker-jeuk
benoud(heid)	gorrel	lightning bird
benoudheiddruppels	guarri	mafufunyane/a
boegoe	guarri tea	mafuta
boep	haasbek	malpitte
beer boep	Harry's Angels	mamlambo
on boep	hell in, the	moffie
boereraat	herbalist	moeg
bokbaard	hing	mpundulu bird
boom	hoepelbeen	mtagati
boom tea	horries	muti
bones	hotnotskougoed	muti man
throw the bones	hotnotstee	muti shop
borsdruppels	Hottentot's tea	naar
bry (bray/brey)	Hottentot apron	nadors
buchu	[Hottentot's boego]	nerves, on his/her etc.
buchu brandy	[Hottentot's	nerves, workson your
buchu leaves	kukumakranka]	Noodhulpliga
buck fat	huisapteek	nyanga
bula party	impundulu bird	oes
cancer bush	insangu	Old Dutch Medicine
castor oil bush	inyanga	omgekrap
chorb	jags	overmass
clapped	jalappoeier	pampoentjies
cotch	jigger	pap
dagga	jumat	parmantig
dassieboegoe	kaalgat	patat salf
dassiespis	kaalvoet	peperkorrels
derm	kaffir tea	peppercorns
deurmekaar	kamma-	peppercorn hair
dik	kankerbos	pinkie
dikbek	kannawortel	poegai
doepa	kersbos	pundus
doepa-olie	kiewietjebene	rainmaker
dolos	klipsweet	rain queen
dom	kleinserig	redwater
drogies	korrelkop	[reggie]
droog-my-keel	kotch	regmaker
duiwelsdrek	kroeskop	right, not
Dutch Medicines	kuif/kyf	ritual murder
dwaal	kukumakranka	rooibos tea/tee
dwaalie	kukumakranka	sangoma
	brandy	Satan's dung

seeroog-	swak	turlington
seeroogbossie	sweatleaf	ufufunyana
	sweetkruie	uhlaka
sinkings	takhaar	
skeeloog	tackie lips	umtagathi
skiets	-tee	veld-
skrik 1	guarri tee	veld fever
slaams	kaffer tee	veld sores
slangmeester	hotnots tee etc.	veld remedy
slangsteentjie	thick	verdriet, dronk
slap	throw bones	verlep
smell out	tikoloshe	[verligtheid]
snake stone	toe	[verkramtheid]
snoep	tokoloshe	versterkdruppels
snot-en-trae	toor	vies
spook	toordokter	white sore throat
stick on	toorgoed	witchdoctor
stinkblaar	trekgees	wolwegif
stoef	treksel	
stops		

1. slamaaier

17. Historical Administration

This group of words consists of terms, many of them obsolete or obsolescent, which have reference to the early administration of the Cape Colony under the Dutch East India Company (Jan Compagnie, Here Seventien, free burgher, Slave Lodge, V.O.C.), and under the regime of the British (Court Calendar, District, Division, location).

Included are the names of certain officials (Fiscal, Secunde, Secretarius, landdrost, heemraad, veldwagtmeester), terms relating to land tenure and estates (leeningsplaats, request place, quitrent, full place, Boedelkamer), .. monetary units current at the time (rixdollar, schelling, dubbeltjie, stuiver), .. and items relating to trade and taxes (opgaaf, pagter, kaffir fair, goodfor).

The few later terms concerning the Boer republics or the South African Wars, see category (20), are here bracketed.

African Court Calendar	erf	[Raadhuis]
Almanac	fair, Kaffir	[Raadsaal]
blueback	field cornet	[Volksraad]
Boedelkamer	field cornetcy	heemraad
Bode	Fiscal	Reformed Church
boer	free burgher	request place
[Boer bank note]	full place	request farm
Boede	goodfor	rixdollar
burgher	heemraad	Robben Island
burgher commando	Here Seventien	schelling
burgher duty	Indian (Hindoo)	Secretarius
Burgher Senate	Jan Company	Secunde
burger ship	[koffiegeld]	skilling
free burgher	landdrost	Slave lodge
Cape triangular	leeningsplaats	Stadhuis/house
commando, burgher	loan place	stuiver, various sp.forms
commandant	location	tronk
field commandant	opgaaf	veld corporal
veld commandant	pagter	veld cornet/cornetcy
Compagnie, Jan	pasbrief	veldwagtmeester
Company, the	plaats, leenings	[Vierkleur]
coolie	placaat	V.O.C.
Court Calendar	place,	Wardmaster
district	loan place	water fiskaal/fiscal
Division	full place	[Zarp]
Divisional Boundary	request place	[Zuid Afrikaansche
drostdy	Political Commiss-	Republiek]
dubbeltjie	ioner	
Dutch East India	quitrent	
Company	-raad-	

18. House, Garden, Building and Buildings

This category contains terms relating to houses in town or country, indoors and out, the names of some public or semi-public buildings, and some of the more generally known terms of the building trade. Here too are the names of specifically South African pieces of furniture and other household equipment, and of a number of indigenous woods used in building or cabinet making.

As in the case of several other categories the vocabulary of this is for convenience divided into smaller, more homogeneous sections. Of the lists only that of the names of various woods is alphabetical. In the others the terms have been grouped in what has seemed a logical sequence. A full alphabetical list of the contents of category 18 follows the shorter ones.

HOUSES: Cape Dutch, dakkamer, dekriet, holbol, solder, brand-solder, balk, stoep, stoepbank, (stoepkamer), Robben Island stone/slate, stable door, bo-en-onderdeur, onderdeur, voorhuis, voorkamer, yellowwood/geelhout -beams, -floors, -furniture, peach pip floor, perskepitvloer, copper, hoekkas, muurkas, rusbank, sitbank, opsitbank, bankie, riempie-chair, -seats, -stoel, stoelriempies, kist, bruidskis, wakis (agterkis, voorkis), Tulbagh chair, baliestoei, tub chair, konsistorie stoel, sandveld chair, Cape foot, kudu foot, voetstofie, konfoor, stofie, klerekas, jonkmanskas, riempie-katel, linnekas.

Kitchen: koskas, slave chair, (slave hole),

Fire: Brandhoutboom, (kreupelboom), takkies, dennebol (donnyball), miskoek, Free State coal, Karoo coal, doofpot. Cooking: bakoond, bakkis, oblietjie iron/pan, kettle, koffieketel,* konfoor, tessie, skottel, pekelbalie, soutbalie, botterbalie, soutvaatjie, watervaatjie, calabash, botterbak/spaan, bakkie, (stompi), kaffir pot, stove.

Cleaning: vadoek, 'dip', blue soap, smear, mis(t), boer soap, berry wax, zinc bath, lappie, jammerlappie, (wax berry), stompi.

Bedding and other soft goods, luggage: Basuto blanket, strykyster/ijzer, kombers, velkombers, karos, cushion, mat, kaffir sheeting, sail(cloth), face cloth, book/bag, schoolbag, bliktrommel, trommel.

Objets: Africana, bokaal, Boer bank note, veldponde, Cape Triangular, Hernhutter knives, paintstone, konfynt jar, moskonfynt jar, Martevaan, konfoor, komvoor, tessie, V.O.C. mark, V.O.C. glass, silver, Arita ware etc., [ostrich skin/egg].

Cellar: anker, leaguer, stukvat, (slave quarters).

Garden: for flowers see 13. Flowers, also 28. Plants, 32. Trees and

Shrubs: kraal manure, bush soil, kikuyu grass, coarse-quick, fine quick, fynkweek, skaapplaas, ouklip, uintjies, skoffel, stoep plant, stoep chairs, braai, (vryhoek), furrow, sluit, sloot, monkey(face)stone.

* brandewynketel, a copper still, has been omitted from the text as too rare for inclusion - a sought-after collector's piece.

TIMBERS: (assegaai wood/hout), baster- (prefix), beefwood, blackwood, boekenhout, borriehout, els (rooi els, wit els), geelhout, hard pear, ironwood, kaffir plum, karreehout, kersiehout, kiaat, knobwood, ²kalander, kamassiehout, rooi melkhout, wit melkhout, red milkwood, white milkwood, pear, red, hard, white pear/peer, (pylhout), Rhodesian teak, rooihout, saffraan, sneezewood, stinkhout, red, black and Camdeboo (cannibal) stinkwood, swarthout, tambuti/ tambotie/tombotie wood/hout, tierhout, Transvaal teak, umzimmete, wagonwood, yellowwood, ysterhout, zwarthout.

OUTBUILDINGS AND OTHER OUTDOOR STRUCTURES: A number of these appear at 11. Farming and Domestic Animals: werf, opstal, compound, improvements, pack house, afdak, skuur (schuur), waenhuis, (misvloer, dung floor), hok, kraal, stellasie, breipaal (brei riems), trapvloer, slave bell, gracht, furrow, kleinhuisie, P.K., picanniny kia. Fencing: dropper, apron, verandah, doringdraad. Dwellings: hartebeeshuis, struis, storosha, pondok, skerm, kaya, kia, volkshuisie, rondavel, square-davel, longdavel, (National) Road Camp, rest camp. African: hut, storosha, tambookie/ buki grass, mat rush, matjiesgoed, matjiestou, sleeping mat, gogogo, (kaffir pot), stampblock, stamper, kraal.

LAND, BUILDING, CONSTRUCTION, TOOLS: erf, stand, unimproved/ improved, dung floor, misvloer, perskepitvloer, balk, faggot, klonpie/je, klinker, Free State nails, zinc roofing, (sink), dekriet (dakriet), dagha, hardup, gereedskapkis, coolie pan, mason, handlanger, tradesman, troffel, koevoet, sail, skoffler, trek saw, bobbejaan spanner (Free State micrometer screw), boslemmer, (treknet), dolos, ouklip, Robben Island Stone/Slate.

CHURCH AND OTHER PUBLIC BUILDINGS: (Kerk), konsistorie, (konsistorie stoel), preekstoel, kerkhuis, Nagmaalhuis, (Nagmaal tent), pastorie.

Stadhuis, Drostdy, Slave Lodge, Raadsaal, Raadhuis, Voortrekker Monument, Boeresaal, Bunga.

(tronk), (eating house), (abafazi), (amadoda), ostrich palace

abafazi	balie stoel	blackwood
afdak	balk	blue soap
agterkis	bank	bobbejaan spanner
amadoda	rusbank	boekenhout
anker	sitbank	bo-en-onder/deur
apron	stoepbank etc.	Boer bank note
assegaai wood/hout	bankie	boer soap
bakkis	baster- (woods)	Boeresaal
bakkie	Basuto Blanket	bokaal
bakoond		
-balie-	bath, zinc	bookbag
botterbalie	beefwood	borriehout
soutbalie	berry wax	boslemmer

botter	handlanger	kombers
botterbak	hard peer/pear	konfoor/komvoor
botterbalie	hardup	konfyt jar
bottervaatjie etc.	hartebeeshuis	konsistorie
braai	hoek	konsistorie stoel
brandhoutboom	hoekkas	koskas
brandsolder	vryhoek	kraal
brei/y riems	Hernhutter (knife)	kraal manure
breipaal	hok	kreupelboom
bruidskis	holbol	kudu feet
Bunga	improvement	kweekgras
bush soil	ironwood	² kalander
calabash	jonkmanskas	kamassiehout
Cape Dutch (style)	kaffir-	lappie/lap
Cape foot	kaffir plum	jammerlappie
Cape Triangular	kaffir pot	leaguer
compound	kaffir sheeting	longdavel
coolie pan	karreehout	Martevaan
copper	-kas	mason
cushion	hoekkas	mat
dagha	jonkmanskas	sleeping mat
dakkamer	linnekas	matjiesgoed
dakriet	koskas	matjiestou
dekriet	klerekas	[mat rush]
denne/dannebol	karos	melkhout/milkwood
'dip'	Kar(r)oo coal	rooi/melkhout, red,
dolos	katel	wit/melkhout, white
donnyball	kaya	mis
doringdraad	Kerk	miskoek
dropper	[kerkhuis]	misvloer
Drostdy (House)	kersiehout	monkey(face)stone
dung floor	kettle/ketel	moskoniyt jar
els,	coffee kettle	muurkas
rooiels	[brandewynketel]	Nagmaal huis
witels	kiaat	[Nagmaal tent]
eating house	kis(t)	National Road camp
erf	agterkis	oblietjie iron/pan
face cloth	bakkis	onderdeur
faggot	bruidskis	opsitbank
Free State Coal	gereedskapkis	opstal
Free State Nails *	voorkis	ostrich palace
furrow	wakis	ouklip
geelhout	kleinhuisie	packhouse
gereedskapkis	klinker	paintstone
gogogo	klompie/je	pastorie
gracht	knobwood	peach pip floor
	koevoet	pear/peer
	koffieketel	hard pear/peer

* Free State micrometer screw

Free State bolt

red pear/peer	sluit	trommel, blik
white pear/peer	smeer	tronk
pekkel balie	sneezewood	tub chair
perskepitvloer	solder	Tulbagh chair
picanniny kia	soutvaatjie	uintjies
P.K.	squaredavel	umzimbete
pondok	stable door	unimproved
preekstoel	Stadhuis	vaatjie
pylhout	stampblock	vadoek
quick(grass)	stamper	[veld ponde]
fine quick	stand	velkometers
coarse quick	stellasie	verandah
Raadsaal	stinkhout	V.O.C.
Raadhuis	stinkwood	V.O.C. mark
rest camp	black stinkwood	V.O.C. glass etc.
Rhodesian teak	Camdeboo stink-	voetstofie
riem	wood	
riempie	red stinkwood	volkshuisie
riempie chair	etc.	voorkamer
riempie katel	-stoel	voorkis
riempie seat	konsistorie stoel	Voortrekker Monument
riempie stoel	riempie stoel	vryhoek
riempie stool etc.	Tulbagh stoel	waenhuis
road camp	stoelriempies	waggon chest
Robben Island stone/ slate	stoep	waggon wood
rondavel (squaredavel)	stoepbank	
roode/rooiels	stoep chairs	wakis
rooihout	stoepkamer etc.	wax berry
rusbank	stofie	wit els
saffraan	stompi	yellowwood
sail	stoof	yellowwood beams
sandveld chair	storosha	yellowwood floors
schoolbag	stove	yellowwood furniture
schuur	struis	etc.
sink	strykijzer/yster	ysterhout
skaapplaas	stukvat	zinc
skerm	swarthout	zinc bath
skoffel(er)	takkies	zinc roofing
skottel	tambuki grass	zwarthout
skuur	Tambutu wood	
slave	tessie	
slave bell	tigerhout	
slave chair	Tomboti wood/hout	
slave hole	tradesman	
slave quarters	Transvaal teak	
sloot	trapvloer	
	trek saw	
	[trek net]	
	troffel	

19. Human Types

This category brings together a heterogeneous collection of nouns, all of which refer to a human being of some kind. Some are the terms used for members of a family (oupa, ouma, oom, tante, boet, neef, niggie) most of which will also be found in Category 1. Modes of Address. Others refer to occupations (canteen keeper, pagter, kooper, housemother/father, koppie walloper, hawker, general dealer, kurveyor); a few in this group have unfavourable or potentially unfavourable connotations (kaffir trader, Boer-verneuker, bush mechanic, bosbouer, spoorie and padkamper all move on to dubious ground.) Others are the names of officials past and present (fiscal, landdrost, heemraad, commandant, headman, blackjack), or of people in the army (blouie, ouman, roofie). A fair number, some of which are at 23. Languages, Peoples and Tribes, have reference to race or colour (European, Coloured, Malay, black, white, blanke). Many of these are offensive (coolie, Dutchman, kaffir/er, coon, geelbek, boesman, choc, hotnot). Related to these are some of the political terms: kafferboetie, betoger, broeder, ja/broer, handsupper, joiner, most of which have adverse connotations: as have the terms of the rock-spider, hairy-back, and mealie-cruncher set. Category 19 contains numerous other derogatory terms comparable with the 'fool, dolt, crook' set of ordinary English. These range from the mildly deprecatory to the grossly offensive (dwaalie, skelm, askoek, mompara, papbroek, blikskottel, domkop, houtkop, jaap, skaap, skebenga/u, skepsel, vabond, donder, all of which vary in strength according to context or tone of voice).

Other items, most of which are also to be found at 16, have reference to personal appearance or other idiosyncrasy (vetsak, kroeskop, skeeloog, dikbek, korrelkop) or to sexual deviance (moffie and trassie).

On a 'safer' level are most of the words which have reference simply to a place of origin: Banana boy (Natal), Vaalpens (Transvaal), Kaapenaar (Cape), Woltone (Cape), Blikoor (Orange Free State).

There are some African words here (all to be found also at 2 African World): abakwetha, kwedin, umfaan, makoti, imbongi, inyanga, sangoma, intombi, moruti, umfundisi etc. which have reference for the most part to age, status or occupation.

This sketch of category 19 is by no means exhaustive: there are many more words in it than can be listed here, but it should give at least an impression of the range, in the text, of vocabulary referring to 'all sorts and conditions of men.'

abafazi	boere-	coolie
abakweta	boeremeisie	coon
abelungu	boereseun	crunchie
actuarious	boereverneuker	dertiger
African	boerevrou	diaken
Afrikander	boesman	dikbek
Afrikaner	bo(o)de	dikkop
agteros	boet	doedie
agterryer	ouboet	dominee
aia	kleinboet	domkop
alderman	boetie/bhuti	donder
algemene handelaar	bof	Dopper
amabunu	Bok	Dors land trekker
amadoda	bok	dronkie
amagoduka	bokpal(s)	Dutchman
amajoni	bokkie	dwaalie
amalaita	Bolander	European
amapakati	Bombay Merchant	family
amasoja	boode	father, big/small
askoek	bosbouer	fazi
Auntie	bossboy	field cornet
ayah	Botha's Babes	fiscal
baas, basie	boulder	water fiscal
backvelder	boy	fossicker
Banana boy	delivery boy	free burgher
bandiet	flat boy	fundie
bangbroek	garden boy	gammat
bangie	house boy etc.	gatjaponner
Bantu	broeder	gaatjieponner
baruti	Broederbonder	geelbek
bergie	bundu basher	general dealer
betoger	burgher	gentoo
bibi	free burgher	girl
bittereinder	bush mechanic	garden girl
black	buti (boetie)	house girl
blackjack	bywoner	nurse girl
blanke	canteen keeper	wash girl etc.
Blikoor	Cape boy	goffel
blikskottel	Cape Coloured	gom
bloubaadjie	capie	[gops]
blougat	captain	grootbek
blouie	cheesa/chisa boy	Hajee/Hadji
blourokkie	chief	hairystack
boardman	choc	handlanger
boer	chommie	handsupper
veeboer	Christenmensch	Harry's Angels
trekboer	coloured	
	commandant	

hawker	klonkie	moulvie
headman	koelie	mullah
heemraad	kooper	muti man
heer	-kop	mynheer
herbalist	koppie walloper	Nat
herdboy	korrelkop	neef, nefie
Herstigte	koster	nie-blanke
Hindoo	kraalhead	non-black
Hollander	krans athlete	non-European
home boy / girl	kransie	non-franchise people
hotnot	krev	non-voter
Hottentot	kroeskop	non-white
house mother/father	kugel	nooi
houtkop	kurveyor	ntombazaan
huilebalk	kwedien	ntombi
I.D.B.	laatlammetjie	nuuskierige agie
Ikey	landdrost	nyanga
imbongi	leader	okie/oka
Indian	Leopard	oom
Indian (S.A.)	loshotnot	oorlam
induna	maat	ostrich farmer
	makoti	ou
intombi	Malay, Cape	oubaas
inyanga	mampara	ouderling
jaap, japie	man	oudstryder
jabroer	Mary	ouma
Jim Fish	mason	ouman
	-master	oupa
John	market master	ousus
joiner	pound master	outa
jong	Matie	outjie
juffrou	mealie cruncher	overseas visitors
Kaapenaar	meester	padkamper
kaaskop	meid	pagter
kafferboetie	meisie	pampoenkop
kaffir	meneer	papbroek
raw kaffir	mevrouw	papsnoek
white kaffir	mies	Passenger Indian
kaffir trader	miesies	pellie blue
kanniedood	mijnheer	Peruvian
kehla	mlungu	piccanin
kenner	Modjaji	pikkie
karel	moffie	plaas-
khaki	mompara	plaasboer
kind(ers)	moruti	plaasjapie
kleintjie	mother, small/big	plaasseun etc.

plank	sister	tcc, tok,
platteland	skaap	tokkelok
play white	skebenga/u	toordokter
[Political Commissioner]	skeeloog	touleier
poor white	skefie	totty/töt
poppie	skelm	tradesman
poundmaster	skepsel	transport driver
predikant	skinderbek	transport rider
Prog.	skokkian queen	trassie
P.R.U.	skolly/ie	trekboer
quaestor	skutmeester	trekker
queen	small-	Voortrekker
rain queen	small father	Dorsland trekker
shebeen queen	small mother	treknetter
skokiaan queen	smeerlap	tribesman
raadsheer	smelter	tronk volk
rain-	smous	troopie / troepie
rainmaker	gold smous	tropsluiter
rain queen	lappiesmous	tsotsi
ramsammy	vrugtesmous	Tukkie
randlord	soldoedie	uhlaka
rector	spider, rock	uitlander
remskoen	spoorie	umfaan
Reverend	Springbok	umfazi
Robben Islander	State President	unfundisi
rock-(spider)	stemvee	unnumzane/a
rondganger	stock farmer	uncle
rondloper	stoep farmer	Uppie
roofie	stoep-sitter	Vaalpens
rooinek	storosh	vabond
rope	stormjaer	vat-en-sit woman
samesmelter	strandloper	veeboer
Sammy	sugar baron	veldcornet
sangoma	sukkelaar	veld commandant
sap	suliman	[veldwagmeester]
schelm	suster	veggeneraal
scriba	swaer	verkrampste
secretarius	takhaar	arch verkrampste
secunde	tannie	super verkrampste etc.
sellout	ticket tannie	verligte
sestiger	tante	vendue master, clerk
settlaar	tata	verdomde
settler	tickey snatcher	verdomde Engelsman
shebeen queen/king	tjommie	verdomde rooinek
shift boss	toegt boy	verdomde uitlander
shottist	toegt labourer	verneuker, boere
sisi		

vetsak	Vrysta/ter	wit chdoctor
voetganger	wardmaster	Witsie
volk	ware boer	Wol tone
volksleier	ware Afrikaner etc.	woodcutter
volkies	water fiscal	Young Turk
voorloper	white	Youth, the
Voortrekker	white kaffir	Zarp
vroteier	winkler	zoggie
vrou	witbaas	zoller
vryer	witkoppie	

20. Hunting, Weapons and War

This fairly small category covers three separable fields, as its designation indicates.

'Hunting' in South African English does not have its specialised British sense of fox-hunting, nor the characteristic oppositions of meaning parodied in 'hunting, shooting and fishing.'

'Hunting' in the South African sense is reflected in hunt, hunting season, hunting horse and hunting dog and regrettably, in forms having reference to the extinction of game (shot out, hunted out). There is also the vocabulary of the skills of veldcraft: spooring, becreeping and bringing a gun op skoot. The game hunted, however, is not included here. It will be found in categories 6. Creatures, which includes numerous varieties of antelope etc. and 3. Birds.

The weapons are a heterogeneous collection - the Colonist's voor- and agterlaaier, sterloop and snaphaan on one hand, and on the other those of African tribesmen and townsmen: induku, mkonto, kierie, assegai and battle stick.

The vocabulary of warfare reflects, in the first place, the colonist's campaigns against indigenous peoples: crackers, rooibaadjies, burgher commandos and Kaffir Wars and fighting by and among African people of former times, eat up, wash spears,

More recent items of African provenance are faction fight, panga and battle-stick.

As far as 'European' warfare is concerned, this collection spans some of the vocabulary of the South African Wars of 1880-1881 and 1899-1902 (khaki, bittereinder, handsupper, joiner, uitlander, kruithoring, schans, concentration camp, Boer bank note, veld ponde, voëlvry), and some of the two world wars (the U.D.F., the Cape Corps, the song 'Kimberley Train', Up North, red oath, red flash/tab, bush cart).

There is a fair sampling of the vocabulary of more recent date of the present servicemen (ouman, blouie, mindae, vasbyt, varkpan, roofie). A great deal of the National Service vocabulary, however, probably never gets into print and some, e. g. area,* is omitted here.

Finally, category 20. includes some of the slang words to do with fighting (slat, get drukked and 'stick'), which will be found among the colloquialisms in category 10, as are some of those of the National Servicemen.

agterlaaier	bavianboud	bobbejaanboud
amajoni	becreep	Boer
amasoja	becreeping cap	Boer banknote
Anglo Boer War	bittereinder	Boer War
assegai, <u>n</u> , <u>vb</u> .	Bloemfontein	Botha's Babes
[assegaibos also pylhout]	Appreciation	burgher
baie dae	blougat	burgher commando
battle stick	blouie	burgher duty

*See Appendix to Category 20

'bushman hunting'	khaki	sjambok
bushcart	kierie	skerm
by-and-by	Kimberley Train	[slat]
Cape Corps	knobkierie/kerrie	snaphaan
commandant	kruithoring	[snoek kierie]
Commandant-General	looper	soldoecie
veld commandant	mindae	spears, to wash
commandeer	mkonto	spoor
commando	National Service	spocrer
burgher commando	National Servicemen	spooring
on commando	National Service	Stellenbosch
concentration camp	training	sterloop
crackers	op skoot, to bring	stick
doppie	oudstryder	troopie/ <i>troepie</i>
druk	ouman	U.D.F.
to get drukked	<i>packing out parade</i> panga	uitlander
eat up	Permanent Force	Up North
faction fight	P.F.	usutu
field cornet	red -	varkpan
handsupper	red flash	vasbyt
hunt	red oath	veg-
hunting	red tabs	Veg-Generaal
hunting dog	roer	Veld and Vlei (School)
hunting horse	rooibaadjie	veld-
hunting season etc.	rooinek	veldcraft
hunted out	roofie	veld commandant
Impala	safari	veld marshal
impi	sambok	veldponde
<i>indenas (at induna)</i>	skans/schans	Vierkleur
induku	shambok	voëlvry
joiner	shot out	voorlaaier
Kaffir War	shottist	Vryheidsoorlog
[kerrie]		wash spears, to
		[yellow belly]

Category 20. Appendix

Appended here are some of the terms given by Brigadier J. H. Picard in his article 'Roofies and Oumanne' in English Usage in Southern Africa Vol. 6 No. 1 May 1975: some of these will be found in this text without their specific military significance (these are indicated by square brackets).

- balsak - kitbag
- bokkies - infantry
- hardegat - most stubborn
- indoenas - the 'top brass'
- [kas] - steel locker
- kettie - (slang) rifle, (see cattie)
- mammajoor - Sergeant Major
- mooi-moois - 'step-out uniform'
- pineapple - a hand grenade
- staaldakke (steel roofs) - helmets
- skietgat - shooting range
- [skrik] - a very ugly specimen
- [slagter] - Medical Officer
- tank jokie - a member of the Armoured Corps
- [trommel] - tin trunk
- varkhok - barrack room
- vuilgat - one of particularly dirty habits
- vuiluil - a useless soldier

21. 'Insects'

The list which follows would perhaps be more properly called 'goggas' because it contains creatures which even a non-specialist knows are not strictly insects. They are those everyday crawling, hopping and flying things found in houses and gardens in South Africa, some of them with names as colourful as themselves, and a handful of those which plague the farmer in this country. There has been no attempt at scientific or other grouping of this heterogeneous collection, apart from the inclusion in 11. Farming and Domestic Animals, of some of those which may be regarded as pests affecting the agriculturist or stock farmer.

Argentine ant	jigger	rusper
army worm	kalander	sandveld grainworm
Australian bug	kar ^(t) oo caterpillar	sandworm
baboon spider	koringkriek	[silver fish]
baviaan spider	louse/luis/lice	songololo
blaasop	mealie stalk borer	stinkbug
bobbejaan spinnekop	mealie rusper	tampan
bont tick	mealy bug	tick
bosluis	miggie	blue tick
brommer	miskruier	red tick
Bushman rice	mopane worm	bont tick etc.
button spider	muggie	toktokkie
Christmas bee / beetle	nunu	tsetse fly
C.M. R. beetle	oogpister	voetganger
'fly', the	papies	wattle looper
gogga	'piogter'	
gonya	praying/preying mantis	
hoogpister		
Hottentot God	rooibaadjie	

22. Landscape and Places, Topography

Most of the words placed together in this category will be found spread out among several others, notably 31. Travel and Vehicles, 26. Pioneering and Settlement and 11. Farming and Domestic Animals. They form, however, a natural group of their own. Many of these words for the features of the South African landscape are permanently enshrined as some of the most frequent elements in our place names (Category 27) and are among the earliest items which moved out of South African into 'other' English. Veld, koppie, kloof, krans, drift, poort, vlei, vlakte have been part of the vocabulary of travellers, missionaries, naturalists and those of the military who left memoirs, from the earliest times in this country. Some of them are of later date such as mine-dump, township and sinkhole: nevertheless it is as part of the South African scene that they are offered together here.

aar	hoek	put
antheap	karroo	rand
ba(a)ken	kar(r)oo veld	rant
backveld	kar(r)oo area	reef
berg	kloof	saltpan
bergveld	kommetjie	sandveld
bontveld	kop	seacow hole
bult	koppie, kopje	seekoegat
bundu	kraal	sinkhole
bush, bushveld	[kramat]	sluit, sloot
dam	krans	soutpan
dirt road	laagte	spruit
district road	leegte	thirstland
divisional boundary	laeveld	thornveld
donga	location	township
dorp	lowveld	trek path/pad
dorsland	mine-dump	turnoff
drift	mopane veld	uitkyk
duineveld	nek	up country
dwarswal	oog	veld
elandveld	ouklip	vlakte
eye	pan	vlakteveld
field, the	salt ~	vlei
fontein	plaats	ysterklip
gopse	platteland	zeekoegat
g(r)amadoelas	pont	
highveld	poort	

23. Languages, Peoples and Tribes

This category does not purport to be exhaustive. It includes some of the peoples and tribes of Southern Africa and their languages. Three of these, Boskop-, Kromdraai- and Swartkrans- (ape) man, refer to prehistoric human types. Others, e.g. Tambookie, are of mainly historical interest. Certain official ways of referring to persons in South Africa: White, European, non-White, non-European, Coloured etc. are also included. Most of these will also be found at 4b State

With the languages are the artificial languages of restricted communication - Fanakolo and Chilapalapa (the so-called 'mine-kaffir' and 'kitchen kaffir') and the many ways of referring to Afrikaans from the Taal to the 'Afriks,' 'Boet' and 'Dutch' of the school room.

Afrikaans	European	Nguni
Afrikanerism	non-European	non-European
Afriks/ Afriks	Fanakolo	non-White
Anglikaans	Fingo	Nyanga
Bantu language	[Gammatjie taal]	(m) Pondo
basta(a)rd	Griqua	Red
Bastard/Baster, Rehoboth	hlonipa (word)	Rehoboth Bastard/Baster
Basotho	Hottentot (lang.)	Rehobother
baster	[Indian (S.A.)]	Sechuana
Basuto	Kaapse Hollands	Sesotho
Bechuana	kaffir	Sesutu
Bechuanaland	kaffir land	Shangaan
bilingual	kaffir language	Shona
black	kitchen kaffir	Sindebele
Boet	mine kaffir	Sotho, N. and S.
Boskop-	kappie	Swartkrans man
Boskop man	kitchen Dutch	Swazi
Boskopoid	kitchen Kaffir	Taal, the
Botswana	Khoi-Khoi(n)	Tambookie
br(a)y <u>n.</u> & <u>vb</u>	Kromdraai man	Tembu
Bushman, 1 and 2	KwaZulu	Vaalpens
Cape Boy	lapa language	Vaderland Volk
Cape Coloured	Lesotho	White
Cape Dutch	Malay	Xhosa
Chilapalapa	Mosotho	Xosa
Dutch 1, 2 and 3	Namaqua	Zimbabwe
Cape Dutch	nation	Zimbabwean
kitchen Dutch	Ndebele	Zulu
simplified Dutch	Ngoni	

24. Monetary Units, Measures and Time-Space Expressions

This list contains the names of units of currency whether obsolete, rix-dollar, schelling, tickey, or still in use, (rand): there are words pertaining to money in terms of payment (agterskot, goodfor, goodwill, opgaaf), of present or hand-out (basela, zakaat), or of colloquial reference (dosh, mali, greenie.)

Secondly it contains measures, many of which e. g. Cape foot, square rood, morgen etc. have become obsolete with the metrication of the South African system of weights and measures which has its own vocabulary, (mass, comma, cumec): some are dry measures (schepel, muid(sack), bag) or liquid (half-jack, leaguer, anker, aum.)

Apart from these precise measures of quantity, coinage, distance or capacity, South African English is rich in terms of indefinite time-space amount: the year voetsak, before the rinderpest, African time, hour, so-size, plus-minus, span, peanuts, zut, for Africa, which, though they are a far cry from the exact rate of foreign exchange for the rand, have a place in a collection of what might overall be loosely termed 'quantifiers.' [Note: the colloquial words or phrases in this category will be found repeated at 10. Expressions, Colloquialisms and Slang.]

Africa, for	half-jack	rinderpest, before the
African time	hour	rix-dollar
agterskot	jack, half	rood, square-
anker	leaguer	scale
aum	length	schelling
bag	litre	schepel
basela	lobola	skilling
blueback	mali	skutgeld
Boer banknote	mass	so-size
bomb	metrication	span
bonsella	middelskot	stiver, stuiver
bucket	morgen	straight
Cape foot	muid	stukvat
comma	muid sack	takes me up to ...
cumec	ndiblishi	tickey
dosh	niks	long-
dubbeltjie	nipinyane/a	sticky-
erf	opgaaf	tom
for Africa	oulap	tot system
'flu	peanuts	veld ponde
goodfor	plus-minus	voetsak, the year
goodwill	pocket	voorskot
greenie	sugar-	zakaat
gulder	potwana	zoll
ha-ja	rand	zut

Kruger rand

25. Oriental South Africa

This category consists of some of the terms acquired from two Oriental communities in this country: the Malays, who have been established here since the eighteenth century and the Indians who came first to Natal in 1860. Few of the specifically Oriental terms appear to be in very general use: the names of Indian ingredients or dishes known particularly in Natal are a case in point, as is the religious terminology of the Cape Malays, some of which is familiar to people round ^{and} about Cape Town. Apart from chow in the colloquial combination bunny-chow there is no item here, as far as I know, which we owe to Chinese. Omitted from the text is the Afrikaans word tjap sometimes borrowed by English-speaking South Africans meaning a rubber stamp, which is presumably from the Chinese chop, a seal.* The Malay dishes, sosaties and bobotie which appear at 7. Dishes and Cookery are omitted from this category as being too thoroughly assimilated into South African English and Afrikaans for most people to remember their origin, as is baadjie, jacket, which is at 5. Clothing and Footwear.

In the text, for convenience, the Indian terms are placed together as a classified list containing items of clothing, foods and dishes, ingredients, spices, sweetmeats and a handful of heterogeneous items at the end. These are either briefly defined in the Indian Terms section or marked (qv) indicating that they will be found in their correct alphabetical point in the main body of the text.

Although certain items of the vocabulary of Islam are included - the Haj, zakaat, moulvie and madressa of the Indians, and the kramat, rampisny, Chalifah/Kalifa and again Haj, Hadji of the Cape Malays - terms relating to Hindu worship are omitted: the pundal of the temple, thali of the bride and the other numerous terms concerning marriage ceremonies, which are at times encountered in such papers as the Sunday Times Extra, the Indian Leader and Graphic, and the magazine Fiat Lux are too rare in general use to be included here.

Arab	Chalifah	fish horn
arad	champals	gammat
atjar	chana flour	garam/ghurum masala
bibi	chilibite	ghee
biriani	choli	ghomma
blatjang	dhai	ghommaliédjie
Bombay Merchant	dhal	goëlery
breyani	dholl	goodself, your
bunny chow	dhunia	goodwill
burfee	doepa	goolab jambo
butterbread	elachi	gram flour
butter chilli	fish cart	Haj

* G. Subba Rao Indian Words in English (1969) cites this word in use in English as early as 1624 meaning seal or impression.

Hajee /Hadji	lounge	rampi sny
halleem	madressa	[ramsammy]
hing	Malay	roti
Indian (S.A.)	Mary	sambal
Indian Council	masala	sambal/broek
Indian parsley	masoor/mussoor	Sammy
Indian terms [headword]	methi	samoosa 1
Indian Reformed Church	mithai	slaams
jeero	moppie	somf/saunf
jumat	moulvie	soojee
kalya	[mullah]	toering
kaparrang/ring	naan	toudang
karem	papad	tuj
katil	Passenger Indian	zakaat
Khalifa	puri	
kramat		

1. slamaaier

26. Pioneering and Settlement

The terms listed here have largely to do with wagon-travel: the topographical features which added to the problems of pioneers in the early days in South Africa (kloof, drift, krans etc.) are to be found at 22. Landscape, Places and Topography, and the weapons of the savage tribes they encountered are at 20. Hunting, Weapons and War and at 2. African World. One or two obsolete 'travellers' terms' are included here, and the rust(roest) which all but beggared the Settlers of 1820.

African hotel	kneehalter	trek chain
afterclap	laager	trektou(w)
agterox	lager	touleier
agterkis	laer	voorkis
agteros	leader	voorloper
antheap	location	voorslag
assegai	[mat rush] outspan	voorspan
biltong	[paint stone]	voortou
'buck'	party	Voortrekker
buckwagon	pass	~ wagon/wa
bush	remschoen	[wait-a-while]
disselboom	riem	wagon chest
[diving goat]	roest	wakis
Dorsland	rust	wapad
Dorsland trekker	schoft	yokeskey
[field, the]	settlaar	[zeekoe spek]
[girdle of famine]	settler	
Grahamstadter	span	
inspan	sweep	
kakebeenwa .	Thirstland Trek	
katel	~Trekker	
kis	trek	
wa ~ x	trekker	
voor ~	trek gear	
agter ~	~ goed	
gereedschap ~	~ wagon	

27. Place Names

This category is subdivided from 27a - l. The nouns are groups 27a - e.

a. Topographical nouns: this is the largest group and consists of features of the landscape, (some of them urban, marked*), which are found usually in combinations in place names. Many of these are at 22. Landscape, Places and Topography.

b. Abstract nouns: few of these occur regularly, rust (rest) and hoop (hope) are probably the commonest though vrede (peace) occurs in a fair number of names: one not included in the text vreugd (joy) is also found in the unusual combination Rust-en-Vreugd.

c. and d. are names of Flora and Fauna. In the case of c. a plant name in a place name can usually be taken to be an indication of the surrounding vegetation or sometimes of a remarkable tree or clump of trees in the vicinity. Where one of the animal or bird names occurs it usually recalls an historical event (Ezeljacht) or a former or present habitat (Seacow lake, Baviaanskloof.)

e. General nouns: These include a large number of nouns which do not fall into any of the four major groups which do nevertheless occur regularly in place names; and two pronouns, mekaar (each other) and alles (everything) [also ons (our), really a possessive determiner, in the text at hoop].

f. and g. These two groups contain the verbs: (f) uninflected verbs in place names are comparatively few but (g) participial forms, usually preceded by adverbs, are more numerous.

h. Directions: these are the equivalents of North, South, East and West and are found singly or in combination (Suid-Wes Afrika) preceding or following other names (Riebeek-oos, Wesdriefontein.)

i. and j. are the adjectives. These are normally to be found preceding nouns. [Koppiealleen and Boompiealleen (alone) are exceptions.] The larger group (i) is of general modifiers - equivalent of 'long, short, narrow, round, beautiful, strong' etc.. Group (j) consists of colour adjectives only: these are not very numerous but occur frequently and in many combinations. Some of the adjectives are found in their plain (predicative) form and their inflected attributive form, despite their attributive positioning in almost all structures, e.g. Droogas, Droëvlakte, Stilbaai, Stillewater, Langkloof, Langebaan.

k. Adverbs - Prepositions: most of these words function as both adverb and preposition depending on their use and position, and many of them as adjectives as well. They are therefore difficult to separate from each other;

- e. g. Onderp'laas 'lower farm' (adjective)
Waterval-onder 'below the waterfall' (preposition)
Vergelegen 'distantly situated' (adverb)
Verberg 'distant mountain' (adjective)
Agterplaas 'back, rear, farm' (adjective)
Agter-Sneeberg 'behind the Sneeberg' (preposition)

These words in k. are frequently marked A/P/A, Adjective/Preposition/Adverb indicating that they may or do have double or multiple function.

1. These are definite articles, Afrikaans die, and Dutch de, overall equivalents of 'the' and het* which is definite determiner for neuter nouns. [The possessive determiner ons = our (see at hoop) could fit into this group.] *This occurs in early texts in the form t.

All the elements or 'formatives' given in these lists, which contain only a selection of the thousands found in our place names, combine, and continue to be combined as new names are created, in various apparently grammatically stable 'shapes.' While onomastic detail would be out of place, the regular ways in which the formatives combine is perhaps of use and interest enough to merit a place here. They are accordingly simply listed 1 - 12 below with one or two examples of each. [This material is a summary intended for the text of the experimental dictionary. It is treated in detail in Chapter IV 4.4.]

- (1) A proper name, sometimes with a possessive suffix with a noun (usu. 27a or b.) thus:
- (a) Johannesburg, Hammanskraal.
 - (b) Nelsrust, Niekerkshoop.
- (2) One or more abstract nouns:
- Benoudheid (qv), Rust-en-Vrede (qv), Verlatenheid (Desolation)
Eensaamheid (loneliness), Rust en Vreugd (joy).
- (3) A single proper name:
- Elliot, Reitz, Durban, Ladysmith, Petrus Steyn [none of these appears in the text.]
- (4) Two common nouns of varying types:
- (a) Two topographical nouns from 27a. :
Kranskop, Kloofnek, Velddrif, Strandfontein.
 - (b) The name of a tree, plant or flower (27c) with a topographical (27a) noun:
Leliesfontein, Keurboomsrivier, Melkbosstrand.
[occasionally single plant names occur: Wittebome, Suuranys, Kiepersol, Haakdoring, all (qv).]
 - (c) The name of a living creature (27d.) with a topographical (27a) noun:
Wolwehoek, Slangrivier, Stompneusbaai, Kiewietskuil,
Ystervarkfontein, all (qv). [As in the foregoing occasional single names of fauna exist as place names e. g. Loerie Springbok, Pofadder, Bleshoender, all (qv).]

- (d) An abstract noun (27b) with a topographical noun (27a).
Vredefort, Hoopstad, Genadendal (Vale of Grace),
Twyfelspoort (passage of doubt), all (qv).
- (5) Adjective and Noun
- (a) A 'colour' adjective (27j) with, usually, a topographical (27a) noun:
Groenkloof, Witbank, Swartberg, Vaalkop, Bloukrans, all (qv).
- (b) An adjective signifying a quality other than colour (27i) with usually a topographical (27a) noun:
Noupoort, Brakrivier, Kromdraai, Helderberg, all (qv)
[Adjectives of this more general kind are found in combination with abstract nouns (27b) e. g. Goedgeloof (good faith), Goedemoed (good courage, spirit), Langverdriet (long-lasting sorrow).]
[Adjectives occasionally occur singly as place names - Rustig (restful), Dankbaar (thankful), Hoopvol (hopeful), Behulpzaam (helpful).]
- (6) A noun, sometimes a proper noun, with a preposition following or preceding it:
Waterval-onder, Welgemoed-boven, Underberg, Onder-Smoordrift.
- (7) A numeral, cardinal or ordinal, usually with a topographical (27a) noun [numerals are not given in the text]:
Tweespruit (two), Vier-en-twintig-riviere (twenty-four-rivers), Driewerwe (three farmsteads, see werf), Eersterivier (first), Derdehoek (qv) third).
- (8) A noun or proper name with a direction (27h) preceding or following it:
Noordhoek, Riebeek-Oos, both (qv).
- (9) The name of a tribe or nation prefixed to a topographical (27a) noun:
Hottentotskloof, Boesmanshoek, Fransmanshoek.
- (10) A noun preceded by an article:
De Aar, De Doorns, Die Oog, Die Hel, Het Kruis.
[This structure occurs also in French names in South Africa, e. g. La Mercy, Le Chasseur.]
- (11) Structures containing Verbs (27f) are not common: they may contain a pronoun as in Soekmekaar and Helpmekaar, an adverb as in Keerom (turn round), nouns as in Hou Hoek, Hou Moed, Soebatsfontein (beseech); or be negative imperatives such as Twist-niet and Terg-niet.
- (12) A verb participle (27g) preceded usually by an adverb (27k) is not uncommon and is the only type of structure which regularly does not contain a noun. The high frequency adverbs are relatively few: wel, (well), ver- (distantly), wyd- (widely), goed- (well), lang- (long), gou- (quickly), nooit- (never). Some of

the participles remain in their Dutch forms e. g. Welgelegen (qv), Goedgevonden (found), Langverwacht (qv).

An adverb is not the only formative to combine with a participle, a pronoun in Allesverloren (lost), a negative particle in Nietverdiend (not deserved) and a negative prefix Onverwacht (unexpected) are also found.

These twelve basic types with their variants, though quite numerous, may not be a complete picture of the structure of South African place names. It is noticeable however that many new names are formed, like the old ones, on these patterns.

27. Place Names

27a. Topographical Nouns

aar	*gracht	pan
amanzi	heuwel	plaa(t)s
baai	hoek	poort
bad	hoogte	punt
Bay, the	Kaap	put
berg	kamma	rand
Berg, the	Kar(r)oo	sig
bosch	klip	sneeu
bron	kloof	soutpan
bult	kolk	spruit
*-burg	kommetjie	*stad
[committees]	kop, koppie	*steeg
dal	kopje	strand
dam	krans	strandveld
*dorp	kuil	stroom
draai	laagte	thaba
drift	leegte	uitsig
eye	*laan	veld
fontein	modder	vlakte
fountain	mond	vlei
gat	nek	wapad
gesig	nt(h)aba	*-weg
gezicht	oog	

27b. Abstract Nouns

benoudheid	kroon ⁺	sorg
heil	moed	verdriet
hoop	rust	vrede

27c. Vegetation

biesies	doring	papies
bloem	eiken	riet
boegoe	karee	rooiels
boekenhout	kraaibos	ruigte
boom	melkbos	suikerbos
braambos	melkhout	taaibos
dacha	naboom	waboom
dagga	palmiet	witels
doorn	pampoer	wonderboom

+ Not included in the text: signifying 'crown' in a figurative sense, e.g. Viljoenskroon.

27d. Living Things

baviaan	kat	rhebok
bobbejaan	korhaan	renoster
bokke	kraai	seacow
brommer	leeu	seekoei
buffel(s)	loerie	slang
das	malgas	springbok
eland	oester	tollie
esel	paarde/perde	tiger/tyger
ezel	papies	wolf
gans	pofadder	wolwe
hartebeest	pou(w)	ystervark
hazen	quagga	zeekoe
kabeljou	reebok	

27e. 'Other' Nouns

aand	jacht	plaats
alles	jag	plein
avond	kaffir	pos
baken/baaken	kant	pram
Boland	koffie	schuur
braak	kraal	singel
brand	kruis	slagter
breypaal	laager	sout
[committed(s)]	laer	stat
dag	mark	ster
dans	meisie	straat
district	mekaar	swartland
drostdy	molen	tafel
duiwels	môre	twist
einde	morgen	uitkyk
fort	niet	veeplaas
halt	niks	veg
hek	[ons] see hoop	werf
hel	oord	wyn
heuning	paal	zwager
hof	party	

27f. Verbs

draai	terg	verloor
dwaal	twist	verneuk
hou(w)	verdwaal	waai
keer		

27g. Participles

bedacht	gevonde	verloren
gedacht	gezicht	verwacht
geleë		verwag
gelegen	verlaten	

27h. Directions

noord	suid	zuijder
oos	wes	

27i. Adjectives

blink	hol	ou
brak	klaar	plat(te)
breede	klein	rond(e)
diep	koud	schoon
donker	krom	skoon
droë	kwaai	soet sout
droog	lang	sterk
dwars	mooi	stil(le)
goed/e	neder	suur
groot	nou	verkeerd(e)
helder	onderste	zuur

27j. Colour Adjectives

blaauw	groen	swart
blou	oranje/orange	vaal
bonte	rood(e)	wit
geel	rooi	zwart

27k. A/P/A

agter	goed	nooit
binne	onder	ver
bo	om	voor
boven	[over]	wel
buite	niet	

27l. Articles

Die	Het
De	('t)

28. Plants

Not many plant names are part of the general vocabulary as opposed to the specialised vocabulary of botany and gardening, therefore relatively few South African plants appear in the list below.* Some of these appear also in 2. African World, 16. Health, Moods, Medicine and Witchcraft, 11. Farming and Domestic Animals and some also in 32. Trees and Shrubs or 13. Flowers. Items preceded by hyphens are common suffixes found in plant names e. g. -bos, -kos, -biesies. Items followed by hyphens are common prefixes: boer-, hotnots-, rooi-. For the scientific names of plants in this text C. A. Smith The Common Names of South African Plants (1966 edition by E. Percy Phillips and Estelle van Hoepen) has been the principal scientific reference text.

*Note: Many plants included are not described in the text: these are simply illustrations of the use of certain prefixes e. g. bobbejaan-, boer-, esel-, lekkerruik-, pronk-, quagga-, Tambookie-, wyn- or a suffix such as -kweek, which is also a prefix and a noun in its own right.

aand-	boeboes	buchu
aandblom	boegoe	buffalo grass
aap-	boegoebos	buffels-
aapsnuif	boegoe kar(r)oobush	buffelsdoring
aarbossie	bosboegoe	buffelsgras
aas-	boer-	buffelshoring
aasblom	boerkaalblad	-bush
aasbos	boerklawer	bitter bush
aasbossie	boerlusern	blue bush
aaskelk	boerturksvy	cancerbush
aasuintjie	boesmans-	castor oil bush
air plant (kanniedood)	boetebos(sie)	dacha
akkewani	bos-	dagga
aloe	-bos	dassie buchu
anyswortel	botter-	dekriet
avondbloem	botterblom	devil's snuffbox
babala	botterboon	devil's thorn
bangalala	braambos	-doring-
baviaanstou	brakbos	droog-my-keel
besembos	brand-	dubbeltjie
bewertjiesgras	brandbessie	duiweltjie
-biesies	brandgras	duiwelssnuifdoos
blackjack	brandlelie	dunsiektebossie
bloubos	brandneutel	duwweltjie
bobbejaan-	brandewyn-	elands-
bobbejaanappel	brandewynbos	elandsboontjie
bobbejaantou etc.	brandewynbessie	elandsdoorn
		elandsertjie

elephant:	kaffir manna	-manna
elephant's food	kaffir tea	boermanna
elephant's foot	kaffir tobacco	kaffirmanna etc.
esel-	*kakiebos /khakibos	matjiesgoed
eselbossie	kanna (ganna)	melkbos
eselkos	kanniedood	mieliegif
eseloor	kareemoer	misbredie
ezel-	-Kar(r)oo-	-moer-
ganna	bitter Kar(r)oo	moerplantjie
ghaap	Kar(r)oo bitterbos	moerworteltjie
ghwarrie	Kar(r)oo bush	kareemoer
gif-	Kar(r)oo thorn	kirimoor
gifbol	katbos	monkey bomb
gifboom	katdoring	monkey rope
gifdoring	khanna	muis-
guarrie boom/bos	kikuyu	muisoor
haas-	kirimoor	Namaqua-
haasoor	klapper 1 and 2	nas(ter)gal(bos)
haasgras	klein	nenta(bossie)
harpuisbos	koedoekos	old man's beard
heuningblom	koekoemakranka	olifants-
hotnots-	-kos	oulandsgras
hotnots/buchu	veldkos	oumansbaard
hotnots-kukuma-	koedoekos	oumeidsnuifdoos
kranka	olifantskos	palmiet
hotnotskooigoed	slankos	padda-
hotnotskougoed		
hotnots/tee	kruidjie-roer-my-nie	padda preekstoel
Hottentot's bread	kudukos	papies
imfe	kukumakranka	perde-
insangu	‡-kweek-	-pram-
jakkals-	kweekgras	preekstoel, padda
jakkalsbessie	rooikweek	Pride of -
jakkalskos etc.	strandkweek	Pride of de Kaap
Job's tears	leeu-	Pride of Fransch Hoek
jointed cactus	leeubekkie	Pride of Table
kaalblad/blaar	leeubos(sie)	Mountain
Kaapse-	leeudoring etc.	
kaffer-	lekkerruik-	pronk-
kafferboom	lekkerruikbos(sie)	pronkertjie
kafferbrood	lekkerruikgras	pronkgras
kaffer wag -!n-	lekkerruikheide	quagga-
bietjie	lekkerruikpypie	quaggakos
kaffir-	lucky bean	quaggakweek
kaffir bread tree	mak dagga	quagga couch
kaffir bean	manitok(k)a	quick (grass)
kaffir bread		fine quick
		coarse quick
		ramsammy grass

rhebok-	stinkblaar	vetplant
rhenoster-	stomp-	vlakke
rhenosterbos	stompdoring	vlei-
Rhodes grass	strand-	vleigrass
rooi-	streep-	vygie
rooibessie	streepalwyn	waai-
rooiblaar	suring	waaibossie
rooiblom	suur-	waaigras
rooibos	suuranys	waaier-
rooigras	suurgras	waaierbossie
ruigte	swart-	waaiertjie etc.
sand-	sweat leaf	'wait-a-bit' (thorn)
satansbos	sweet cane	waterblommetjie
seeroog-	sweethearts	watereendjie
sinkings-	sweet grass	wit-
sinkingsbossie	taai-	witchweed
sinkingswortel	taaiboorn	wolwegif(t)
skaap-	taaibos	wyn-
skilpad-	taaidoring	wynbessie
skilpadbessie	tambookie	wynblommetjie
skilpadblom	tambookie grass	wynklapper
skilpadbos	tambookie wag-'n-	yster-
slang-	bietjie	zuur-
slangkop	tambookie doring	zwart-
slangkos	tambookietwak	
snake apple	teff grass	
snuffbox, devil's	t(è)rassiebos	
soetriet	toa grass	
sosatiebos	tol-	
sout-	tolletjie	
soutbos	tontel-	
soutganna	tontelbos	
springbok-	tontelblaar	
steekappel	+tulp	
steekgras	twagras	
steen-	-uintjie	
steenklawer	vaal-	
steenste	vaderland-	
ster-		
stickgrass	[veldkos]	

* kakie/khaki klits
kakie/khaki kweek

‡ kakiekweek
fynkweek
growwekweek

+ bloutulp
geeltulp
rootulp

29. Syntactic Categories

As far as possible all items which are not nouns have been assigned to a 'syntactic category' or word class (part of speech).

Of these the group of perhaps the greatest interest is 29vb which consists of verbs, verb phrases and a few pseudo verbs: the fact that about one hundred and eighty fall into this group is an objective sign that South African English is not simply a set of 'names for things'. A relatively large number of verbs then, may be taken as an indication that the South African element is more deeply entrenched than it would be in the case of a scattered 'top-dressing' of nouns and adjectives. Many of these verbs are of course borrowed, or borrowed in translation from Afrikaans or less frequently (call, sleep, borrow, stay well) from the African languages.

The translated structures or transliterated words are listed together at 10., many of them being the verbs and verb phrases of 29vb.

29adj. is also a fairly large group containing not only genuine adjectives, namely those which will take degrees of comparison -er and -est or as intensifier such as 'very', but also modifiers of other types. There are group modifiers like skiet-en-donder, off the veld, out-of-town, up country, nouns which modify other nouns such as Afrikaner, Cape Dutch*, and participial modifiers like eaten out, unwisseled, clapped.

* Apart from noun modifiers of this type, there are very many more used attributively as modifiers. This is usually indicated in the text.]

There are, furthermore, modifiers in this group which are normally not 'free' forms but which function as prefixes frequently in the names of plants e.g. hotnots-, boesmans-, (rooi-) or such items as voor- or agter- which, when used attributively, function as adjectives e.g. voor- or agter- slag, voor- or agter- kis etc.

All modifiers in the group are marked A attributive and P predicative, some are both: thus with vrot A, P, as with 'rotten', there are two possible positions: one can say 'The apple is vrot' predicatively, or 'It's a vrot apple' attributively. On the other hand a man can, attributively, 'be platsak' but could hardly describe himself as 'a platsak ou': just as 'The man is well' is generally accepted, but 'a well man' is substandard. This coding therefore is a key to usage: e.g. we are unlikely to meet 'an off the veld ox', a battle which 'is play-play', an 'omgekrap auntie', a 'full of mud foot', or a fool who 'is blerry.' Naturally, as with standard English, very many of the adjectives and other modifiers can work both ways.

29adv. On account of the structure of Afrikaans in which adjectival and adverbial forms usually do not differ some of the borrowed adjectives can be used adverbially and there is an overlap between this group and the preceding one. There is, however, a group, listed under Modal or Intensifier which includes what are still

1. Except possibly following 'only'.

sometimes called 'adverbs of degree' which are used, not as true adverbs, modifying verbs, but with adjectives or other adverbs.

29prn. This small group comprises both genuine and pseudo-pronouns. They have in common that they are used instead of the indefinite pronouns 'someone', 'somebody' etc. or in the case of niks, peanuts and zut of 'very little' or 'nothing.' The avoidance of direct second-person pronouns by many South Africans is discussed in the text at the entry headed third person form of address.

29prep. These are all English prepositions or prepositional phrases used in ways which are non-standard English, carried over from Afrikaans e.g. by (from Afrikaans by) = at or beside; under (from Afrikaans onder) = among; over (from Afrikaans oor) = about etc.. The phrases e.g. 'on the moment', 'I'm on my nerves', 'use X in place of Y', 'she smacked him through the face' are all translations or transliterations of Afrikaans structures and are mostly found in sub-standard usage. The out of the combinations beaten-, eaten-, tramped- and shot-out is translated from the Afrikaans prefix uit-.

29red. Redundancies listed here are most of them discussed in the text as separate entries and in the entry headed redundancies. Omissions are treated as a whole in the omissions entry with certain cross references to other items.

29vb Verbs and verbal phrases

abba	can't complain	go garshly
ask	classify	gooi
assega(a)i	reclassify	go well
bake	come to hand	hamba
baklei	commandeer	hamba kahle
ban	complain, can't	handle off
becreep	catch	hap
bell	cut	have
bite one's teeth	deproclaim	have to
boeke vat	divorce	him, that's
bog	doesn't/don't want to	hope so, don't
[A.E.] borrow	donder	hou
braai	don't hope so	howl
braak	drag	hunt
bray, brei, brey	drink (pills, medicine)	in span
brei riems	dwaal	is it?
bring op skoot	excuse me	isn't it?
brom	fall pregnant	jaag
bry	farm with	joking, you're
bundu-bash	forget	jol
[A.E.] call	give	klap
came/come there	go black	kneehalter
camp	goef	kotch

kraal	ride flat	steek
kuier	ride on water	stick
kurvey	row	stick away
laager	ru(c)k	stick fast
lead water	ruk	stick on
learn	run, veld	stokkiesdraai, play
lend	sala kahle	stokvel, play
let	scandal	sukkel
loer	scare	take out
loop	schlenter	takes me up to ...
mooi loop	scoff	telling you, I'm
maak gou	scoffle/skoffle	thank you
make	shambok	throw
make a plan	shine through	throw dead
moan	shoot out	throw wet
moera	show through	throw with
mooi loop	sit up	throw bones
must	sjambok	toor
[nè]	skei	tramp
neuk	skel	trek
[never]	skinder	try for white
[not so ?]	skit/skut	upsaddle
off load	skop	vasbyt
off saddle	skop lawaai	vastrap
opsaal	skrik	verneuk
op skoot, to bring	slag	voorloop
outspan	slat	vrek
pack in, 1 and 2	sleep,	vroetel
pack out, 1 and 2	[A.E.] sleep	vry
pick out	sluk	waai
pick up weight	smaak	wait on
plak	smear	want to, doesn't want to
plan, make a	smell out	wash spears
play	smoor	water, ride on
play sport	smouse	wish you, to
play white	snik	with, throw
prop	sny, 1 and 2	woel
pronk	span, in	work on his/your/my
reclassify	span, out	nerves
release	spog	worry
rest	spoor	zoll
ride	sport, play	zone
ride in	stay	rezone
	stay well	

[] pseudo verbs

[A.E.] usually African English

29adj. Adjectives, Noun modifiers and Group modifiers

adjective with infinitive P	improved A, P well-improved	slapgat P (A)
*Africa, for	jags A, P	slim A, P
Afrikaans A, P	kaal A, P [adv.m]	slyt A
Afrikaner A	Kaalvot Ap. Kaalgat P Kaapse Hollands P	snaaks A, P
agter A	kragdadig(e) A, P	snide A
bang P	kroes(ie) A, P	snyde A
beaten out A, P	moeg P	snoep P, (A)
beneek(te) A, P	mooi A, P	snot-en-trane A, P
best A	multi-national A, P	so size P
binne A	mush(ie) A, P	sour A, P
blou, blaauw A	naar P	splinter new A, P
bleddy A	oes P	steeks P (A)
blerry A	off colour A, P	stomp(-) A, P
blind A, P	old fashioned A, P	suur- A
blink A	omgekrap P	swak P, A
boere- A	otherwise P	sweet A, P
boesmans- A	ou A	taai A, P
bont A, P	out-of-town A	tagati P
bos- A	overmass P	tamaai A
botter- A	pap A, P	thick A, P
brak A, P	papnat P	toe P
brede A	parmantig A, P [adv.m]	too good P
busy (with) P		tramped out A, P
Cape Dutch A, P	plat A, P	tweetalig P
clapped P	platsak P	unwisseled P, A
cronky A, P	play-play A	up country A
deadstill P, [adv.m]	poegaai P	vaal- A
deurmekaar P	raw A, P	vatterig P
dik A, P	red, 1 A, P	veld, off the P [adv.place]
dom A, P	red, 2 A	veld- A
Dutch A, P	right, not P	veld-reared A, P
eaten out A, P	salted A, P	verdomde A
egte A	schimmel A	verkramp P
far A	scurvy A, P	verkramppte A
fies P	shu-shu A, P	verlep P
*for Africa	skeef P [adv.m]	verlig P
fris A, P	skeeloog P	verligte A
full of ... P	skelm A, P	vies P
haasbek P [adv.m]	skiet-en-donder A	voëlvry P
herstigte A	skop-skiet-en- donder A	volksvreemde A
holbol A		voor- A
hotnots- A	skut- A	vrot A, P
hunted out A, P	slap A, P	

wait-a-bit A	warm A, P	woes P, (A)
ware A	wissel A	yi A, P

A = Attributive P = Predicative

[adv. m] = also used as adverbials of manner

bos- hyphen signifies noun modifier or adjective usually found as a prefix.

* Post-modifier

29adv. Adverbs [usually adjectives^x]

deadstill	kaalgat	skeef
dikbek	kaalvoet langbek	skelm
haasbek	off the veld	up country
kaal	parmantig	[[so long (adv. of duration)]]

Modal Adverbs and Intensifiers

again	moerava	so a little
already	mos	
binne	never	
darem	now	sommer
doer	now-now	still
hellout	rather	there
helluva	rather very	
maar	so	

29prn. Pronouns and pseudo-pronouns

alles-	mekaar	a person
all two	niks	pronouns, omission of there-
-and them	or so	third person form of who all*
baie	peanuts	address zut

29prep. Prepositions and Prepositional Phrases

by	otherside	over
in	on water, ride	through
in place of	out-	through (the face)
in the/out of the road	out beaten	under
off the veld	out eaten	with
on ... nerves	out tramped	
on the moment	out shot	

29red. Redundancies

a	busy	have to
again	but	little
already	darem	maar
article, a, the, an	finished and (klaar)	mos

* This item appears in the text of the dictionary: *addenda p. 589*

negative	only	sommer
now	rather	still
now-now	small/little	what
no	so	yet
(sugar)diabetes	(yellow)jaundice	(horse)riding

Miscellaneous

Omissions:

articles	possessive suffix	're
-ed	pronoun/noun	3rd person singular verb inflection

Suffixes:

-goed	-heid	-ie
-------	-------	-----

Prefix

there-

30. Trade, Mining and Law

This category has mainly to do with buying and selling, including some of the legal terminology associated with these and, in a limited way, with the language of mining. The buying and selling is of many different kinds and importance: there is large scale trading: Hollard Street, the Kaffir Circus of the London Stock Exchange; Border Industry, the Sakekamer, the S.A.B.S. Smaller scale traders are the algemene handelaar, wirkler or kaffir trader, and the itinerant transport rider, kurveyor, boer-verneuker, smous, fish cart hawker or vegetable 'sammy.' The vocabulary of buying and selling in the early days includes the vendusie with its vendue-master, -rolls and -clerks, its opslag-afslag bidding and strykgeld; the negotie winkel, the Kaffir Fair and the pagter. More modern times give us the stock fair with its obligatory no objection permits, and such emporia as the butchery, bottle store, tea room or muti shop - even the illegal dagga-running and still current I.D.B. Those places whose trade is to offer refreshments, particularly liquid refreshments are also reflected here, the canteen of earlier days, the beer hall, koffiehuis, eating house, lounge, shebeen (and the somewhat anomalous tea room), as are certain types of trading licences (general dealer's, hawker's, tea roomkeeper's!)

The law and procedures of sale, especially land sale and conveyancing are represented here in such terms as voetstoets, rouwkoop, kustingbrief, bond, erf, ba(a)ken, stand, proclaim a township, 'improved' land. The types of historical land tenure, quit-rent, loan place etc. are to be found at 17. Historical Administration. Methods of payment, some of which are found elsewhere, at 11 or 24 have a place here (voorskot, agterskot, middelskot, kontant and lay-by.)

In the administration of estates the Boedelkamer of former days has been replaced by the Master of the Supreme Court, part of whose function is described at 'uitkoop.'

Few actual articles of commerce are listed, only such unusual items as 'Caper' tea, wattle, tigers-eye and aloe-juice are found here.

The vocabulary of the Diamond Fields and gold mines contains, as does the law of sale, some historical terms, such as bewaarplaats, tailings, mynpacht, baby, dolly, the dreaded Breakwater in wait for the I.D.B. and the Diamond Trade Act (or I.D.B. Act) of 1882 which called a halt to indiscriminate trading. Here are the koppie-wallopers, koopers and fossickers of the early days in The Fields, the dry diggings, the blue and yellow ground, the scotch carts and stampers and beside them are the shift boss, boss boy, induna, cheesa boy, amagoduka (migrant labourers), compounds, cocopans, mine-dumps and kimberlite, of modern mining.

The language of diamonds themselves from the blink klip found by the wandering Hottentot to the Koh-I-Noor is rich in colourful terminology: the gonivahs, schlenters, snyde diamonds and glassies of the 'bad old days' and the grit, industrial diamonds, off-colour, meléc, stones and fancies^{*} of the organised trade today.

* The digger's term cappy has recently come to light.

The more esoteric terminology of mining is beyond the province of this text but it is hoped that Category 30. provides an interesting cross-section of the varying vocabulary of business in South Africa.

aandag	eating house	kustingbrief
afslag	eGoli	lappiesmous
agterskot	erf	lay by
algemene handelaar	Fair,	lounge
ali shop	Kaffir Fair	mailship/boat
aloe juice	Stock Fair	melée
amagoduka	fanakalo	middelskot
Apple Express	fancy	mine-dump
Arab	Fields, the	muti shop
auntie	fish cart	mynpacht
ba(a)ken	fossick	negotie winkel
baby	fish horn	no objection permit
bag	general dealer	off-colour
bakkie	general dealer's	off sales
banket	licence, store etc.	opslag
beerhall	glassie	overseas markets
bewaarplaats	gonivah	pagter
blinkklip	goodwill	plaats, bewaar
blue ground	grease table	pocket, sugar etc.
Boedelkamer	Greek shop	Rand
boere verneuker	grit	(randlord)
Bombay Merchant	handle off	reef
bombella train	hawker	Rent-a-bakkie
bond	hawker's licence	rouwkoop
border industry	Hollard Street	S.A.B.S.
boss boy	hotel	Sakekamer
botel	I.D.B.	sammy
bottle store	I.D.B. Act	schlenter
Breakwater	induna	scotch cart
butchery	industrial diamond	[semels]
canteen	kaffir fair	shebeen
'Caper' tea	Kaffirs (shares)	shebeen trade
cappy	Kaffir Circus	shift boss
cheesa boy	kaffir trader	sinkhole
cheesa stick	kaffir truck	slenter
cocopan	kaffir eating house	smallworking
[Company, the]	kimberlite	smous
compound	klip	goldsmous
coolie shop	blinkklip	lappiesmous
dagga running	koffiehuis	snyde diamonds
diamond	kontant	snyde diamonds
Diamond Trade Act	kooper	span (men)
dolly	koppie walloper,	
dry diggings	walloping	

stamp, battery	tickey snatching	vendue clerk
stamper	tickey-line	vendue roll
stand	tiger's eye	vendue account
stokvel/fel	togt	vendue note
stones	tot system	vendusie
strykgeld	township	verneuker, boer
sugar baron	township, to proclaim a	VETSAK
Swakara	transport driver/ing	voetpad
tailings	transport rider	voetstoets
tea room	transport, riding	voorskot
tearoom keeper's	[trekfishing]	wattle
licence	uitkoop	winkel
tickey-	unimproved	winkler
tickey 'phone	vendue	yellow ground
tickey shop	vendue master	

31. Travel and Vehicles

This category contains words pertaining to means and modes of travelling both old and new. As is to be expected a major part of the vocabulary concerns wagon travel, wagon types and equipment, and draught animals. This is accordingly the first section. A full alphabetised list follows the sections.

(1) Wagon Travel

Wagons: buckwagon, Grahamstadter, kakebeenwa, trekwagon, Voortrekker wagon, -wa (bokwa, ossewa, kakebeenwa, trekwa etc.).

Gear: afterclap, agterslag, bucksail, disselboom, gereedskapkis, katel, -kis (agterkis, voorkis, wakis, gereedskapkis), remskoen, sweep, tent, trek gear, trekgoed, voorslag, wagonchest, wagon-tent.

Draught Oxen and Tackle: after-ox, agteros, span, trek-ox, voorspan. Disselboom, trekchain, trektou, skey-yoke, yoke skey, skey, neck strop, strop, voortou.

People: agterryer, leader, touleier, voorloper, [kurveyor, transport rider.]

Verbs: inspan, outspan, voorloop, [kurvey].

(2) Riding and Horse-drawn Conveyances

Cape Cart, scotch cart, Spider (American spider, German spider, four-wheeled spider), opsaal, upsaddle, offsaddle, knee-halter.

(3) Stopping-off Places, Rations, Journeys.

Outspan, laager, African hotel, rest camp, botel, hotel (see 4b), Nagmaal tent, padkos, safari, [caravaning], overseas trip, hour as a measure of distance and skof/schoft/skoff a leg of a journey.

(4) Roads, ancient and modern, rural and urban.

-pad, trekpad, wapad, drift, poort, pont.

National road, District road, beton, divisional boundary, dirt road, turnoff, ompad, middelmannetjie, dwarswal, bundu, Kaapse draai.

Hou links, hou regs, ry versigtig, traffic circle, robot, ticket tannie.

(5) Modern Travel

Chorrie, bakkie, canopy, fat taekies, kattebak, knortjor, snorktjor, tjorrie, Rent-a-bakkie, pirate taxi, Volksie, Impala, mailboat, mailship, S.A.R., Zoo train, mbombela, sit-en-kyk, bombella train.

African hotel	[kurvey/ing]	four-wheeled spider
afterclap	laager	German spider
after-ox	leader	strop
agterkis	links	sweep
agteros	mailboat/ship	tackies, fat
agterryer	mbombela	tannie, ticket
agterslag	middelmannetjie	tent
bakkie	Nagmaal tent	wagon-tent
beton	National road	tent wagon
[bo(a)tel]	nek-strop	tjorrie
bombella train	off saddle	knortjor
bucksail	ompad	snorktjor
buckwagon	opsaal	toulei er
bundu	ossewa	traffic circle
canopy	outspan	[transport riding]
Cape cart	overseas trip	trek
[caravaning/er]	pad	trek chain
chorrie	padkos	trek gear
dirt road	trekpad	trekgoed
disselboom	wapad	trek-ox
district road	pirate taxi	trektou
divisional boundary	pont	trek wagon
draai, Kaapse	poort	trekpad
drift	remskoek	turnoff
dwarswal	Rent-a-bakkie	upsaddle
fat tackies	rest camp	Volksie
gereedskapkis	riem	voorkis
Grahamstadter	robot	voorloop
[hotel]	rotel	voorloper
hou links./ regs	ry versigtig	voorslag
hour	safari	voerspan
Impala	sail	voortou
inspan	S.A.R.	Voortrekker wagon
Kaapse draai	schoft	-wa-
kakebeenwa	scotch cart	bokwa
katel	sit-en-kyk	kakebeenwa
kattebak	skey	ossewa
-kis	yoke skey	trekwa
gereedskapkis	skof	wakis
agterkis	skoft	wapad
voorkis	span	wagon chest
wakis	spider	yoke skey
kneehalter	American spider	Zoo train

32. Trees and Shrubs

Only a few of the numerous trees and shrubs of South Africa are listed here, and some of them appear as well in category 28. Plants if they are shrubs of small growth. The items followed or preceded by hyphens are some of those prefixes or suffixes which occur frequently in the names of Flora generally e.g. colours rooi-, wit-, swart- or common suffixes such as -boom or -doring. Those of this category which are timber trees will be found again as the names of numerous woods in category 18. House and Garden, Building and Buildings, and occasional names of shrubs used medicinally will appear at 16. Health, Moods, Medicine and Witchcraft.

American aloe	droog-my-keel	kiaat
anaboom/tree	flat crown	kiepersol
apiesdoring	garingboom	kinkelbossie
assegaibos	geelhout(boom)	kippersol
assegaiwood	guarrie boom/bos	klapper
basboom	gwarrie	knobwood
baster-	haakdoring	kokerboom
blackwood	haak-en-steek	kraaibos
blinkbaarboom	hakea	kremetart(boom)
bloodwood	halfmens	kreupelboom
bloubos(sie)	hard pear/peer	lemonade tree
bloukom/bloekom	harpuisbos	lucky bean
bluebush	hotnotsboerboon	mak-boerboon
bluegum	ironwood	maroela
boekenhout	kaffir-/er-	melkbos/boom
boerboon	kaffir honeysuckle	melkhoutboom
boom, kaffir denne etc.	kaffir plum	milkwood
bottlebrush	Kaffer wag-'n-bietjie	modjaji palm
brandhoutboom	kamassiehout	monkey orange
broodboom, kaffer	kameeldoring	monkey thorn
camelsfoot	kamnassiehout	mopani tree
camelthorn	kankerbos	naboom
cancerbush	karreeboom	olifants-
Cape honeysuckle	karreehout	onderbos
castor oil bush	Karoo wilg/willow	ou-
cream of tartar tree	[kat/doring]	ouhout
danneboom	Kei apple	pear/peer
denneboom	kersbos	peperboom
-doring-	kershout	pepper tree
kameeldoring	kersiehout	perde-
haakdoring	keurboom	Port Jackson willow
doringboom	khakibos	pram-
doringbos	khakiklits	protea
driedoring	khaki weed	pylhout

resin bush	stinkhout	waaier-
rhenosterbos	stone pine	waboom
Rhodesian teak	sugar bush	wagonwood
[-riet	suikerbos	wag-'n-bietjie
dekriet	swart-	wattle
soetriet]	swartdoring	waxberry
rolbos	swarthaakdoring	wild fig
rollbush	swarthout	windmakerbos
rooi-	taaibos	wit-
rooiels	taaidoring	wit els
rooihout	-thorn-	witgatboom
rooikrans (willow)	tierhout	witteboom
saffraan	tombotiboom/ram-	wonderboom
satansbos	tontelbos	yellowwood
seringboom	Transvaal teak	yesterday, today and tomorrow
silver tree	umzimbete	ysterhout
sneezewood	vaderland-	yster-
sosatiebos	vingerpol	
spekboom		

33. Weather

It is surprising that in rain-, drought- and climate-conscious South Africa the words associated with the weather itself should be so few. Terms associated with water catchment will be found listed at 11. Farming and Domestic Animals, and the measure cumec* at 24. Monetary Units, Measures and Time-Space Expressions.

bergwind	mistrain	sleep mist
berg-ish	monkey's wedding	skimmeldag
Cape Doctor	'Oubaas'	South Easter, black, blind
dustdevil	paraffin	
jakkalstrou	[pula]	tablecloth
Kar(r)oo, Lowveld, Highveld climate	[shu-shu]	tablecloth southeaster

* Metricated cusec.

34. Writing, Education and the Arts

This small category is a 'mixed bag' containing the terms used for forms at school (class, standard, sub-standard), for examinations (Matric(ulation), Taalbond) and for particular types of schools or institutions (farm school, Veld and Vlei School, Madressa, platoon school, private school.)

Some of the terms associated with bilingualism and the Afrikaans language are here (language movement, Taalbond, Taaltoets, tweetalig, Afrikanerism, Afrikaans farm) and the children's slang Afrix and Boet, along with their usage of 'learn', dop, schoolbag and bookbag. In 'Higher' education are the long standing colloquial names of some of the Universities and their students and institutions (NUSAS, ASB, jool) and such personages as Rector and house mother and/or father.

Here too are such bodies as H.S.R.C., C.S.I.R., S₂A₃, and paleontological finds: the Stellenbosch culture and the prehistoric ape men of Boskop, Kromdraai and Swartkrans.

Heterogenous items are the snelskrif of commerce, the aftelrympie of the poets, and last but not least the writers of the thirties and the sixties, dertigers and sestigers.

Afrikaans farm	Ikey(s)	schoolbag
Afrikanerism	jool	snelskrif
Afrix /Afriks	Kromdraai ape man	Springbok(Radio)
aftelrympie	language movement	standard
A.S.B.	learn	Stellenbosch (culture)
Bantu Education	madressa	
bilingual	Matie, Matieland	Sub A, B.
[Bloemfontein Appreciation]	Matric.	substandard
Boet	Matriculation	Swartkrans man
bookbag	Matriculation exemption	Taalbond
Boskop		Taaltoets Taalfees Taalbeweging Taalstryd
Boskopoid,	meester	tok, toc
Boskop man	NUSAS	
class	platoon school	tokkelok
conditional exemption	private school	Tukkie
C.S.I.R.	Rector	Tuks
dertiger	R.A.U.	tweetalig
dop	R.S.A.	UNISA
exemption, conditional	S.A.A. A. S.	U.P.E.
exemption, Matriculation	S ₂ A ₃	Uppie
farm school	School leaving certificate	Veld & Vlei School
house mother/father		Wits
H.S.R.C.	sestiger	Witsie

4.3 Labelling for a Dialect Dictionary

Devising a scheme for labels and abbreviations for any type of dictionary is inevitably a problem. It involves, just as does the choice of items for inclusion discussed at 4.1, and in Chapter I (i.1, 1.2 and 1.3) decision and personal judgement on the part of the lexicographer whose views may differ widely from those of his readers or his peers. Virginia McDavid in Variations in Dictionary Labeling¹ ably demonstrates over a fair-sized sample of controversial items such as aggravate (for 'annoy'), awfully (for 'very'), around (for 'about') anxious (for 'keen'), that the makers of six different dictionaries differ materially one from another in the choice of labels for these items, and in whether they see fit to label them at all. Too much labelling of course is wearisome and time-consuming for the user and too little, as in bilingual or some so-called pocket dictionaries, can make for a text full of pitfalls. There is too, the related question of how short these labels can be without being irritatingly cryptic to the reader.

These questions, obviously, must apply to the work of the dialect lexicographer also, and are for him particularly awkward. Hedging any word about with a number of labels, provisos and restrictions may lead him up the forbidden path of prescriptivism, while avoidance of labelling procedures may be regarded as, and is I think, irresponsibility towards his readers. Apart from this, over-shortness of the labels or other signals can create a positive barrier between a text and a reader, as continual back reference to what an abbreviation stands for can be a very real source of frustration and annoyance. It is, I feel, therefore, of the utmost importance to keep the abbreviations long enough to be as far as possible transparent to the reader, while meeting the actual raison d'être of abbreviations, saving space while retaining clarity.

There is a curious anomaly in the reader-writer situation in the case of a dictionary of any kind. On the one hand lexicography must surely be the most formal of the literary arts, that one in which there is least real contact between the writer and reader; on the other hand few kinds of writing can more speedily enrage and frustrate a reader than bad, obscure or careless lexicography, particularly that studded with unintelligible bits and pieces of labelling.

1. Lexicography in English (see McDavid R.I. and Duckert), p. 187-208.

Labelling is essentially a practical business, providing information about an item; it is also a signalling system from writer to reader, and therefore a means of acknowledging their common humanity even within the formal context of lexicography. For both these reasons the system must work, and fulfil the functions for which it has been designed: firstly it must provide the information as fully, and yet as economically, as possible and secondly it must do so in such a way as to provide for the reader the maximum usefulness with the minimum of bother.

The labelling and abbreviations system is divided into three sections for the sake of convenience and of following the general classificatory principle employed in the text as a whole.

The First Section is Linguistic Functions consisting of

- (a) Word Classes (Parts of speech)
- (b) Other linguistic signals
e. g. attributive, cognate, participle, diminutive, imperative, prefix, suffix etc. all of which are of sufficient importance to merit a category separate from the parts of speech.

The Second Section is Usage Signals consisting of

- (a) Status labels
e. g. Colloquial, Objectionable, Historical etc. with the sub-section Sectional which tentatively aims at covering the jargon or 'sectional language' of certain groups, e. g. Building Trade and Plumbing, the Army and Mining.
- (b) Other. These are the 'convenience' items like usu., occ., abbr., cf.
- (c) The category numbers with a key to them and what they cover.

The Third Section is Other English Dialects and Other Languages which is subdivided into

- (a) Dialects and
- (b) Other languages.

The text for which this labelling system has been designed is unconventional in several ways and presents information of different kinds.

It is a dialect dictionary and therefore, particularly as it is of SAE, must make provision for clear and simple elucidation, where possible, of the provenance of borrowed words.

Dealing as it does with a dialect rather than the standard literary form of the language, many of the items in this text are, inevitably, informal, colloquial and occasionally coarse. It is in this field that the lexicographer is on dangerous ground for here the labelling must reflect his opinions, and few people agree upon what constitutes the acceptable or its reverse. The labels cannot, however desirable this may seem on the surface, run the gamut of nuances from Informal, Colloquial, Slang, Vulgar, Coarse, Objectionable, Offensive to 'Taboo' - since at the most superficial level there would be too many status labels for too few words, and at a slightly deeper one, classifications of this sort must shade off one into the other, and any attempt at a cut-off point between them can only be ridiculous.

For items which are beyond the scope - or pale - of the literary standard, clearly some type of definition of their rôle in the dialect must be provided by the labelling system. Clearly eight potential labels must be narrowed down to more practical choices for this purpose, however. Informal vs Colloquial: I favour the label Informal since it potentially covers a wider field of nuances than Colloquial. 'Informal' does not exclude written usage, as 'Colloquial' in its strict sense does, and is for this reason a more flexible and desirable label: but any attempt to abbreviate it shows it up as thoroughly inflexible. Inf. Info. and Inform. are completely misleading, having as they do the implication of information, not informality. For this reason the conventional Coll. has been adopted, with reservations, and with the addition in the key of 'Informal in speech or writing.' This question of 'how much' or 'how little' must also affect the key and what is in it, as giving descriptions may obscure the fact that it is a table as such. Obviously 'Coll. Colloquial' is not very helpful, but definition of its application in a table is not usually given, the key to the abbreviations, and explanations of them usually being dealt with separately as in the American Heritage Dictionary and Webster's Third International Dictionary. In the case of Vulgar vs Coarse; both these words have a greater emotional loading than is desirable for a usage label which aims at objectivity, and Coarse being also applicable to appearance and manner is disqualified by its over-broad field of application. Slang, often confused with jargon (for which I have used the label Sectional, in a limited way), is so overworked and abused a term as to make one hesitate to employ it, since in the terminology of many persons it

covers the whole field from Informal to 'Taboo.' For such persons 'there is' as Dr Johnson said 'no settling the point of precedence between a louse and a flea,' and this view can only be disregarded. Slang is, however, not as dated a term as Vulgar, though it perhaps lacks its clear nuance of disapproval. I have therefore adopted Slang after the Webster's practice, again with strong reservations.

The question of the 'really bad' words has been a problem since lexicography began. Dr Johnson, as I have quoted elsewhere, felt 'Barbarous or impure words and expressions may be branded with some note of infamy ...' also 'carefully eradicated ...'¹ and the lady who congratulated him on omitting them had as her reward his riposte 'So, Madam, you have been looking for them.' Lexicographers who do omit them simplify their task considerably in that a condemnatory label for the totally unacceptable need not be devised. In drafting the text I used for a few items, several of them offensive modes of address, the linguistic signal * signifying 'not attested', which I have since noted in the key to the American Heritage Dictionary, unfortunately without explanation of its application. For purposes of the final version this asterisk, unassisted, was clearly ineligible. I have accordingly adopted the label Obj. signifying 'Objectionable among certain groups' and, perhaps somewhat rashly, Unacct. (Unacceptable) if the term, as the Shorter Oxford English Dictionary puts it, is 'not in decent use.' 'Offensive' is used within the definition of any item, particularly modes of address which could give offence, such as coolie, kaffir, John; and 'Abusive', also within the definition, for modes of address which constitute insult or abuse, such as donder or blikskottel. Objectionable then is the usual label of disapprobation which I have allowed myself, with the use of Unacct. perhaps half a dozen times or fewer, if full condemnation or branding 'with some note of infamy' has been necessary or desirable. Objectionable, however, is somewhat intractable in the matter of abbreviation, since both Obj. and Object, could well, and usually do have grammatical application: I have adopted Obj. (placed before the signification) and have used object in full where required in the text.

The label 'Substandard' (Substand.) has been cautiously applied and the field of its application restricted. It is used as a comment on grammatical usage or faulty structure. This occurs most commonly in dialect prepositional uses ('by' for 'at') or in direct translations or transliterations of structure from Afrikaans, such as 'you joking' (transliteration of Jy jok) or 'little' in 'a small little tin' (from klein blikkie.) where 'little' is redundant (29 Red.) Substandard is not

1. A Plan for a Dictionary of the English Language, 1747.

used for lexical vocabulary items as a criticism of their use or content; this is taken care of by Slang, Obj. or Unacct. It is therefore unlikely to be found as a label for nouns other than in exceptional cases e.g. 'standpoint' (transliteration of standpunt, meaning 'point of view').

This text, being a lexicographical experiment, is also unorthodox in that it provides certain extra information, as well as the system of categorised classification. Both of these factors complicate the treatment of the labelling of course, but are, I think, nevertheless worthwhile.

Firstly, the syntactic labelling Linguistic Functions divided into the two sections, one covering the Parts of Speech and the second Other Linguistic Signals, has been updated in line with modern linguistic terminology. This is of course somewhat out of line with standard lexicographical practice, which, as is remarked elsewhere (4.1) applies adj. and similar incongruous grammatical designations quite inapposite to the syntactic behaviour of the word designated.

For a dictionary of the Seventies, however, something which differentiates more subtly between adjective and noun modifier, and 'adverb of degree' and intensifier, (which modifies an adjective or adverb and not a verb at all) must be used to maintain these very functional distinctions. Accordingly modifier (usually with n. (noun) unless it is a phrase, and intensifier to cover single word or group modifiers of adjectives and adverbs, are introduced.

In line with the, to me, preferable Afrikaans term Woordsoorte the key is headed Word Classes (Parts of Speech).

The Other Linguistic Signals include grammatically or morphologically essential labels as opposed to the simple function classifications described above, e.g. analg. (analogous / analogy) translit. (transliteration of) agent. (agentive suffix) inflect. (inflected form) predic. (predicative form) personif. (personifying) etc.

This set of labels should make finer distinctions and greater linguistic accuracy possible in the description of function and grammatical signification for this text.

Secondly, although the items are of course alphabetically listed for the body of the text, it is a categorised dictionary, in which every category is in itself a 'blanket' usage label. A category number (or numbers) is used for every item, thus fixing it in its place or places in the vocabulary.

The 34 category lists containing all the words in each are given for reference purposes at 4.2. Items in certain categories will automatically carry the usage (status) label of that category, e.g. 10 Expressions, Idioms and Slang, Coll. also 17 Historical Administration, Hist. Only one Category, 29, is non-semantic. This is called for convenience 'syntactic' and the number 29 with vb. adj. prep. prn. etc.

appears with all items which are not nouns. The reason for marking non-noun status is that in the dialect dictionaries so far examined there is an over-heavy preponderance of nouns, particularly the names of flora and fauna; so in the case of SAE it is, I think, of interest and value to indicate the frequency of other word-classes in the vocabulary.

This is done to a lesser extent in Category 27 which has a letter code following the number indicating, in the case of the noun, the semantic category into which it falls, e. g. 27a (+ topographical), 27c (+ flora) 27d (+ fauna) etc., in the case of the adjective which of two classifications (colour or 'other') and in the case of verbs, prepositions etc. an indication of their functions. These are listed with Category 27.

These category numbers cannot of course be clear to the reader without reference to a table, but they should be relatively unobtrusive for the reader who is simply looking up meanings. For one who is interested enough to delve further, it is hoped that there is a 'ready-reference table' to be placed inside the back cover or at some other convenient spot in the book.

Thirdly, an attempt has been made, briefly described elsewhere, (4.1) to give cross-dialect references where possible to uses in other English speech communities (See 4.5). This has been done for two reasons: to add interest to individual items, and to try to begin to integrate SAE into the overall dialect picture of English rather than to isolate it. This process requires a set of dialect labels, most of them fairly straightforward most of which are used with cf. (compare, contrast) e. g. wag-'n -bietjie cf. Austr. wait a while. These labels are: Austr. (Australian), Ang. Ind. (Anglo Indian), Brit. (British), Canad. (Canadian), Hong K. (Hong Kong) N. Z. (New Zealand), Scottish (Scottish English), U. S. (American) Jam. E. (Jamaican English,) [A. E.] African English, [I. E.] Indian English, SAE of course, and dial. (dialectal). The inclusion of Jamaican English must of course be accounted for, apart from anything else, because some South African readers might well not take kindly to the notion of comparing their established dialect with the Creole of a black English speech community.

The amount of cross reference material provided by even a cursory examination of Cassidy and Lepage's Dictionary of Jamaican English makes it clear that there is material too good to waste on the grounds that Creole is not dialect. In defence of the inclusion of Jamaican English it can be said that in common with any dialect of English, this is an L1, first language or mother tongue of its speakers.

The bracketed labels are [I. E.] English of Indians in S. A. and [A. E.] English of Africans in S. A. both of which, particularly [A. E.] occur fairly frequently, though few South African Indians or Africans could be regarded as L1 speakers of English.

It is arguable that these belong among the status labels which are in the section of Usage Signals, since the items marked [I. E.] and [A. E.] are cases of usage restricted to particular groups. However, as other speech communities are listed together, it is possibly best to add these two important ones to this table Dialects and other Forms, the 'other forms' covering both the L1 Jamaican English and the Indian and African¹ L2 manifestations.

1. See 4.5 on West African (and Colonial East African) English.

ABBREVIATIONS AND LABELLINGI Linguistic FunctionsA Word Classes (Parts of Speech)

<u>adj.</u>	adjective
<u>adv.</u>	adverb/ial (with verb)
<u>" m.</u>	adverb/ial of manner
<u>" p.</u>	adverb/ial of place
<u>" t.</u>	adverb/ial of time
<u>art.</u>	article (definite or non-definite)
<u>intensifier</u>	'adverb of degree' with adjective or adverb (not verb) e. g. <u>baie</u> (qv)
<u>interj.</u>	exclamation, interjection
<u>modifier</u>	a word or phrase (not an adjective) qualifying a noun
<u>n.</u>	noun
<u>n. abstr.</u>	abstract noun
<u>n. modifier</u>	noun used to modify (qualify) another noun
<u>n. prop.</u>	proper noun or proper name ⁺
<u>prep.</u>	preposition
<u>prn.</u>	pronoun
<u>vb</u>	verb
<u>vb intrns.</u>	intransitive or non-transitive verb [*]
<u>vb trns</u>	transitive verb

+ n. prop. is used both for proper nouns which signify one and only one specific entity or person e. g. Dr Johnson, and for proper names of places or persons which are nevertheless used as common 'count' nouns e. g. 'There is a Rietfontein in every province', or 'There are lots of Browns in the telephone directory.'

* vb intrns. is used both for verbs of complete predication, and for non-transitive verbs which cannot take a passive transformation but nevertheless require a complement.

B Other Linguistic Signals

agent. suff.	agentive suffix, usually <u>-er</u> as in <u>teacher</u> marking the doer or performer of the action designated by a verb.
analg.	analogy, analogous
angl.	anglicisation (of form)
attrib.	attributive/ly; of a noun modifier (see Section IA) or of an inflected form of the adjective e. g. <u>verkrampste</u> (qv)
cogn.	cognate with, used of words of common or related origin.
demon.	demonstrative
deriv.	derived (with <u>fr.</u>) or derivatively
dimin.	diminutive (usually with suff.)

etym.	etymology
idiom.	idiom/atic/ally
imp.	imperative, of verbs and verb phrases
indef.	indefinite/non-definite, of articles or pronouns
inflect.	inflected (form), inflection
lit.	literal/ly
neg.	negative, of form or structure
object	object (of a verb), see Obj. Section IIA
partic.	participle or participial, of verb or phrase
pass.	passive
personif.	personifying, usually of suffixes, see also agent. suff. Section IB
phr.	phrase
predic.	predicative, of form of adjective e. g. <u>verlig</u> (qv), or of position of other modifier e. g. These animals are <u>off the veld</u> .
prefix	prefix
pl.	plural
qn	question
rel.	related to, relative
sing.	singular
subj.	subject of a verb
suff.	suffix
trans.	translation of
translit.	transliteration of
vb phr.	verb phrase, phrasal verb
vbl	verbal as in <u>vbl n.</u>
∅	zero, usually of a plural, e. g. <u>bontebok</u> , usu. names of game, wild animals, fish or birds

Any of these which appear in the head material of an entry may be italicised, e. g. imp. vb phr.

II Usage Signals

A Status Labels

Coll.	Colloquial: informal in speech <u>or</u> writing
Hist.	Historical: of or pertaining to historical institutions or phenomena, the word being still in use, compare Obs. below
Obj.	Objectionable among certain groups
Obs.	Obsolete, no longer in use
Reg.	Regional. This label is at all times tentatively used for SAE.
Sect.	Sectional, jargon of certain occupational, professional, trade or other groups. [see subsection below.]
Slang	Slang usage, seldom found written
Substand.	Substandard usage, usually grammatical, translated structures or transliterated forms, not often nouns.
Unacctpt.	Unacceptable: 'not in decent use'. (Shorter Oxford English Dictionary)

[] Double brackets indicate that the label or item between them is tentative and applied or included with reservations

Sectional

Bldg. Building trade, plumbing etc.
Farm. Farming terms, country use
Mining Terms peculiar to gold and diamond mining
Jewish Terms in use mostly among the Jewish group
Army Terms in use mainly in the Army

B Other

abbr. abbreviation
acc. according to
advt. advertisement
Afr. African
Apr. April
Aug. August
C Century e.g. C18
cf. compare/contrast
cit. cited by
C. of G. H. Cape of Good Hope
Dec. December
dub. doubtful, dubious
edit. edition, if preceded by date e.g. 1973 edit.
edited by, if followed by name e.g. edit. Gordon-Brown
e.g. for example (exempli gratia)
equiv. equivalent to/of
erron. erroneous/ly
esp. especially
etc. et cetera
Feb. February
figur. figurative/ly
fr. from
freq. frequently
ibid. ibidem, the same, usu. of a source of quotation
i.e. id est, that is
Jan. January
Mar. March
MS. manuscript
Nov. November
N. S. E. W. North/ern, South/ern, East/ern, West/ern
occ. occasionally
Oct. October
onomat. onomatopoeic
orig. originally
poss. possibly
presum. presumably

prob.	probably
pron.	pronunciation
pub.	published by/in
quot.	quotation
(qv)	which see (quod vide)
S. A.	South Africa
S. Afr.	South African
Sept.	September
sign.	signifying/meaning
sp.	spelling
<u>usu.</u>	^{usually} swungash used instead of a repetition of the head word.

C Category Numbers

These are more precise usage labels for those who are interested, to show into what section or sections of the vocabulary certain items fall.

A number preceding a definition or part of a definition is that of the category to which the word belongs. Many words fall into more than one category and are numbered accordingly: e.g. assegai n. 20, 2, 26.

wood 18

assegai vb trns. usu. pass. 29vb, 20.

Note: A detailed index of these and their component classes precedes the categorised word lists.

- 1 Address, Modes of
- 2 African World
- 3 Birds (non-domestic)
- 4 Church and State
 - 4a Church
 - 4b State, Politics and Law
- 5 Clothing and Footwear
- 6 'Creatures', Non-Domestic Animals, Reptiles etc.
- 7 Dishes and Cookery
- 8 Drinking and Smoking
- 9 Exclamations and Interjections
- 10 Expressions, Idiom, Colloquialisms
- 11 Farming and Domestic Animals
- 12 Fish
- 13 Flowers
- 14 Fruit and Vegetables
- 15 Games, Dances and Diversions
- 16 Health, Moods, Medicine and Witchcraft
- 17 Historical Administration
- 18 House and Garden, Building and Buildings
- 19 Human types : Persons and Family

- 20 Hunting, Weapons and War
- 21 Insects
- 22 Landscape and Topography
- 23 Languages and Tribes
- 24 Monetary Units and Measures
- 25 Oriental South Africa
- 26 Pioneering and Settlement
- 27 Place Names
 - 27a Topographical Nouns, (Town and Country)
 - 27b Abstract Nouns
 - 27c Nouns : Flora, Plant Names
 - 27d Nouns : Fauna, Names of Living Things
 - 27e Other Nouns and Pronouns
 - 27f Verbs
 - 27g Participles of Verbs
 - 27h Directions, N, S, E, W.
 - 27i Adjectives, General
 - 27j Adjectives, Colour
 - 27k A/P/A. Adjective/Preposition/Adverb
 - 27l Article
- 28 Plants
- 29 Syntactic Categories: All non-nouns are assigned a 'Syntactic' category.
 - 29adj.
 - 29adv.
 - 29art.
 - 29modifier
 - 29vb
 - 29intensifier
 - 29prep.
 - 29prn. (for pronoun or pseudo-pronoun)
 - 29A/P/A Adjective/Preposition/Adverb in the case of 'multi-purpose' words which have all three functions
 - 29interj.
 - 29red. Redundant (often for substandard items)
- 30 Trade, Mining and Law
- 31 Travel and Vehicles
- 32 Trees and Shrubs
- 33 Weather
- 34 Writing, Education and the Arts

III Other English Dialects and Other Languages

A Dialects and Other Forms

- Ang. Ind. Anglo-Indian English
- Austr. Australian English
- Brit. British English (used of dialect or 'standard')
- Canad. Canadian English

Hong K.	Hong Kong English
N. Z.	New Zealand English
SAE	South African English
U.S.	American English (United States)
Scottish	Scottish English
dial.	Dialect/al usu. non-standard form
[A.E.]	African English, i. e. typical of the English spoken and written by Africans in S. A.
[I. E.]	Indian English, i. e. the forms used by Indians in S. A., mostly Natal.
Jam. E.	Jamaican English

B Languages

Afk.	Afrikaans
Bantu	Bantu languages including the Nguni group
Arab.	Arabic
Du.	Dutch, Nederlands
Eng.	English
Fr.	French
Ger.	German
Gk.	Greek
Hebr.	Hebrew
Hott.	Hottentot
Japanese	
Lat.	Latin
Malay	
Nama Hott.	Nama Hottentot
Ngu.	Nguni (Zulu, Xhosa, Swazi)
O. E.	Old English (Anglo Saxon)
Port.	Portuguese
Span.	Spanish
Sotho	(Sesuto)
Xh.	Xhosa
Yiddish	
Zu.	Zulu
O.E.D.	Oxford English Dictionary, if Shorter O.E.D., Pocket O.E.D. or O.E.D. Supplement, this is specified.

Alphabetical List of Abbreviations and other Labels.
 (Fuller explanations appear under Sections IA, IB, IIA, IIB, IIIA, IIIB in the foregoing tables.)

A	abbr.	abbreviation
	acc.	according to
	<u>adj.</u>	adjective
	<u>adv.</u>	adverb
	<u>adv. m.</u>	adverb of manner
	<u>adv. p.</u>	adverb of place
	<u>adv. t.</u>	adverb of time
	<u>adv.</u>	advertisement
	[A.E.]	African English see IIIA
	Afk.	Afrikaans
	Afr.	African
	agent.	agentive see IB
	analg.	analogy/analogous see IB
	Ang. Ind.	Anglo Indian see IIIA
	angl.	anglicisation see IB
	<u>Arab.</u>	Arabic
	Army	See IIA Sectional
	<u>art.</u>	article see IA
	attrib.	attributive/ly see IB
	Aug.	August
	Austr.	Australian see IIIA
B	Bantu	see IIIB
	Bldg.	Building see IIA Sectional
	Brit.	British see IIIA
C	C	Century see IIB
	Canad.	Canadian see IIIA
	cf.	compare/contrast
	cit.	cited by
	C. of G.H.	Cape of Good Hope
	cogn.	cognate see IB
	Coll.	colloquial see IIA
D	Dec.	December
	demon.	demonstrative
	deriv.	derived/derivatively see IB
	dial.	dialect/al see IIIA
	dimin.	diminutive see IB
	Du.	Dutch, Nederlands
	dub.	doubtful/dubious
E	E.	East/ern
	edit.	edition/edited by see IIB
	e.g.	exempli gratia see IIB

	Eng.	English
	equiv.	equivalent of/to
	erron.	erroneous/ly
	esp.	especially
	etc.	et cetera
	etym.	etymology
F	Farm.	Farming see IIA Sectional
	Feb.	February
	figur.	figurative/ly
	fr.	from
	Fr.	French
	freq.	frequently
G	Ger.	German
	Gk.	Greek
H	Hong K.	Hong Kong see IIIA
	Hebr.	Hebrew
	Hist.	Historical see IIA
	Hott.	Hottentot see also Nama III.B
I	ibid.	ibidem, the same see IIB
	idiom.	idiom/atic/ally
	i. e.	id est, that is
	[I.E.]	Indian English see IIIA
	imp.	imperative see IB
	indef.	indefinite see IB
	inflect.	inflection see IB
	<u>intensifier</u>	see IA
	<u>interj.</u>	interjection, exclamation
	intrns.	intransitive see note following IA
J	Jam. E. Jan. Jewish	Jamaican English ^{January} see IIA Sectional
	Japanese	(language)
L	Lat.	Latin
	lit.	literal/ly
M	Malay	(language)
	Mar.	March
	Mining	see IIA Sectional
	<u>modifier</u>	noun or other modifying phrase see IA
N	<u>n.</u>	noun
	N.	North/ern
	<u>n. abstr.</u>	abstract noun
	Nama	Hottentot see IIIB
	neg.	negative see IB

	Ngu.	Nguni see IIIB
	<u>n. modifier</u>	see IA
	Nov.	November
	<u>n. prop.</u>	proper noun or proper name; see note following IA
	N.Z.	New Zealand see IIIA
O	Obj.	objectionable See IIA
	object	object (of a verb)
	Obs.	obsolete see IIA
	occ.	occasionally
	Oct.	October
	O.E.	Old English (Anglo Saxon)
	O.E.D.	Oxford English Dictionary see note following IIIB
	onomat.	onomatopoeic
	orig.	origin/ally
P	pass.	passive
	personif.	personifying See IB
	phr.	phrase
	pl.	plural
	Port.	Portuguese
	poss.	possibly
	predic.	predicative/ly See IB
	prefix	prefix
	<u>prep.</u>	preposition/al
	presum.	presumably
	<u>prn.</u>	pronoun
	prob.	probably
	pron.	pronunciation
	pub.	published by/in
Q	qn	question
	quot.	quotation
	(qv)	quod vide, which see
R	Reg.	regional See IIA
	rel.	related to/relative
S	S.	South/ern
	S. A.	South Africa
	SAE	South African English
	S. Afr.	South African
	Scottish	see IIIA
	Sect.	Sectional see IIA
	Sept.	September
	sign.	signifying
	sing.	singular
	Slang	see IIA

	sp.	spelling
	Span.	Spanish
	Sotho	see IIIB
	subj.	subject
	Substand.	Substandard see IIA
	suff.	suffix
T	trans.	translation of
	translit.	transliteration of
	trns.	transitive see IA
U	Unacctpt.	unacceptable see IIA
	U.S.	United States see IIIA
	<i>usu.</i>	<i>usually</i>
V	<u>vb</u>	verb
	<u>vb intrns.</u>	intransitive verb see note following IA
	vbl	verbal see IB
	<u>vb trns.</u>	transitive verb
W	W.	West/ern
X	Xh.	Xhosa
Y	Yiddish	(language)
Z	Zu.	Zulu
	∅	zero see IB
	~	see IIB
	[[]]	see IIA

4.4 The Treatment of Place Name Formatives for a Dialect Dictionary

The reasons for including the place name formatives as entries in the experimental dictionary have been discussed under problems of inclusion in 4.1, and in Chapter I, 1.8 and 1.9. This section deals with their structures as recurrent patterns, and with what classes of formatives they are.

Two rather widely differing historical comments on the structure of our place names may well serve as introduction to the present material: '... in dry countries, any circumstance relating to water is of sufficient importance to distinguish that place. Thus it is that the Dutch word Fontein is made such liberal use of in all parts of the Colony: the Hottentot word Kamma (water) is not less frequently found in the composition of the aboriginal names.'¹ This comment of Burchell's shows a liberal minded and understanding tolerance of the recurrence of certain items, whereas Thompson shows both contempt and distaste:

'The farm where we now stopped is named Modder-Fonteyn (Muddy Fountain) an appellation so common in the Colony that I have visited, I believe, above a dozen places of that name. It is strange to observe the barrenness of fancy of the boors in giving names to places. In every quarter of the colony we find Brak River, Zwart River, Palmiet River, Baviaan's Kloof and so forth. The appellation being given generally from some quality common to many places, and seldom with that nice and accurate discrimination which seizes the distinctive and peculiar features alone, and embodies them in the name. This may, perhaps, be ascribed to the sameness and monotony of South African scenery; it however occasions much inconvenience and confusion to the traveller'² - an intolerant and somewhat exaggerated view of the same phenomenon.

Many years later, Kipling, it is clearly evident, was fascinated by the South African method of 'building' place names, and tried it himself in his Boer War poems in The Five Nations (1903).

1. William J. Burchell, Travels in the Interior of Southern Africa, Vol. I, 1822, p. 259 (8th August 1811).

2. George Thompson, Travels and Adventures in Southern Africa. 1827 Vol. I, p. 81-2. (I have since found that the Revd Charles Pettman in South African Place Names, (1931) chose this identical passage as an introductory comment upon this subject.)

'Ubique means Entrain, at once for Grootdefeatfontein'
'Ubique means offload, your guns at midnight in the rain'

-and with even greater wryness:

'Our blood 'as truly mixed with yours
All down the Red Cross train,
We've bit the same thermometer
In Bloemingtyphoidtein.'

It is also worth noting that he applied the South African method nearer home by which London became 'Ackneystadt and Thamesfontein to his hero, the Cockney Tommy.²

Before attempting to make an analysis of the structural patterns, there are, I think, several general points worth mentioning. Like other countries which have started as colonies of a mother country, or countries, or which have transplanted communities among their population groups, South Africa has many 'borrowed' place names: from Holland, Amsterdam (later renamed New Scotland), Utrecht, Dordrecht, Alkmaar, Leerdam and others: from Great Britain, Richmond, Margate, Westminster, Newcastle, Dundee, Bedford, East London, and brought by the German Legion in 1856 - 7, and the German settlers of 1858, Braunschweig, Hanover, Hamburg, Berlin, Frankfort, Wiesbaden and Potsdam.

This borrowing of names from the mother country, either from nostalgia or from superficial similarity of the places concerned is, of course, only to be expected of expatriate communities. Examples from the names of British settlements confirm this: Perth, Southport, Newcastle and Ipswich in Australia: Southampton, Cumberland, Lancaster Sound, Fort William in Canada, and legion names in the United States of America: Richmond, Birmingham, Salisbury, Greenwich, Cambridge, Worcester, Reading, New Jersey, New York, New Hampshire and even New England, to name but a few.

There are, too, certain parallels in the South African place names of the suffixes - ton (-town), -dale, -ville, -chester, -caster in - dorp, -dal, -stad, and -burg, which recur in South African names just as their equivalents in English ones.

An examination of South African place names, however superficial, reveals several varying, recurrent structures of which at least one item, with one noteworthy exception, is a noun. It is in the features of these basic nouns that much of the interest lies. Nouns, common or proper, however, are by no means the only components of the place names: there are adjectives, adverbs, prepositions, articles, verbs and their participles variously combining to form what must surely be a uniquely constructed set of names, however repetitive some of their semantic content may be.

1. It is particularly interesting here to note offload (trans. Afrikaans aflaai) the SAE for British 'unload'.
2. Peace is declared, an' I return
to 'Ackneystadt, but not the same;
.....
But now discharged, I fall away
To do with little things again ...
Gawd, 'oo knows all I cannot say,
Look after me in Thamesfontein!

'The Return', The Five Nations 1903

For the purposes of this work these items have been treated as a collection of varyingly combining name-building 'blocks', categorised both according to their grammatical function and to their semantic content showing that they are of grammatically differing shapes as well as semantically differing colours.¹

The ways in which these blocks combine are in themselves of considerable interest, and are described below. They are basically about twelve in number, plus variations, and these are included briefly, in the introductory material to Category 27 Place Names in 4.2 which is part of the text of the experimental dictionary.²

To deal with place names in a dictionary it is clearly necessary to break them down into their various recurrent elements or 'formatives' to make it possible for a reader to check on the meaning of an element encountered in a place name. This will mean that the body of the dictionary is not cluttered with proper nouns and a mass of encyclopaedic geographical material after the fashion of the American Heritage Dictionary which includes very numerous proper names both of places and persons, or of the Webster dictionaries which, somewhat speciously, list them as adjectives. Such an entry as 'Kobe A city of Japan, a seaport on Osaka Bay in Southern Honshu, Population 1, 181, 000. (American Heritage Dictionary) is not, I think, in its proper place in a dictionary, dialect or otherwise. Even less, I submit, is 'pretoria adj. usu cap [fr Pretoria Union of So. Africa] of or from Pretoria the administrative capital of the Union of So. Africa; of the kind or style prevalent in Pretoria.' (Webster's Third International Dictionary, in which Chicago and other U.S. cities are identically handled.)

In the present work the list of formatives for inclusion must clearly be selective, since an exhaustive collection such as Pettman's (South African Place Names, 1931), C. Graham Botha's (Place Names of the Cape Province, 1926) or P. J. Nienaber's (Suid Afrikaanse Pleknaamwoordeboek Deel 1, 1963) or the recent Khoekhoense Plekname of P. E. Raper and G. S. Nienaber (H. S. R. C.)³ would be likely to swamp the other dialect material entirely, since these formatives are very numerous indeed.

They are, however, varyingly combined and continue to be so, and it is, I think, a both useful and necessary part of the lexicographer's job to enable his reader to interpret say Onderstepoort, Klipdrift, Kuilsrivier, Sterkspruit, Welgevonde and similarly constructed names if he wishes to do so, from separate, readily available productive formatives. This productivity has already been illustrated in two ways: firstly, in their

1. In each entry for a place name formative a grammatical signification is given, e. g. '-berg-, n. prefix and suff. ' ; and an indication in the definition of the type of structure in which it occurs e. g. blink- or groen given as adj. in the head material is described as 'usu prefixed to a noun' and followed by examples of place names in which the particular formative occurs.
2. The placing of the categorised survey of the vocabulary as 4.2 of Part 1 results in an apparent duplication of material.
3. I have unfortunately not had access to this text.

practical use in the creation or construction of new names on the old pattern, and secondly in the literary use to which they can be put, here exemplified by Kipling, surprising only in that he was an Englishman. Many South African writers, of course, use precisely the same device for the construction of fictional names, a clearly more satisfactory method than the anagrammatisation 'Teniquota', faintly Amerindian in tone, used by Pauline Smith in The Beadle and The Little Karoo.

It is arguable that these elements belong in a segregated section similar to the pronouncing gazetteer in Webster's Seventh New Collegiate Dictionary. This, if it were possible to make the segregation complete, might be desirable. Many formative elements however, as have already been noted, are common topographical items which are necessary entries in the body of the dictionary. Others are names of plants, birds or other living things to which the same applies: - palmiet, keurboom, waboom, springbok, eland, loerie, kabeljou, malgas and similar items. Their onomastic function, however, must in each case be treated as a subordinate, but indispensable tag to the entry proper, and would not be fittingly removed to a separate section unless it were there duplicated, which would have obvious practical and aesthetic disadvantages. There are, on the other hand, topographical items such as -kuil, -bron, -gat; adjectives like nou-, blink-, klaar-, helder-, skoon-, groen-; verb participles -gedacht, -gelegen, -gegend, -gevonde(n), -verdiend, whose only possible raison d'être in such a work is their function as place name formatives.

The place names themselves appear to have a regularly recurring set of structures, which are here, for convenience, numbered.

1. One of the simplest and most frequent structures is a combination of two nouns, a proper name or noun, plus a common noun, e. g. Johannesburg, Venterstad, Villiersdorp, Du Toit's Kloof, Wesselsnek, Hammanskraal, Odendaals-, Potgieters-, Nelsrus(t), Groblers-, Niekerks-, Adriaans-. Viljoenshoop, Viljoenskroon etc. It is noticeable however, even from so few examples as those above, that the common nouns combining with the proper names, do not carry the same features. They appear to be of two basic types:
 - (a) Those carrying the predictable +topographical feature found in kloof, dorp, stad, kraal, nek, drift, and
 - (b) those carrying the less probable +abstract feature, hoop, rus(t), kroon, less numerous, as might be expected, but reflecting nevertheless the hopes, fears, triumphs or despairs of pioneering life.
2. Certain place names, often of farms, towns or districts consist simply of abstract nouns, also reflections of the lot of those in an unknown land and uncertain climate: Eensaamheid, Eendrag, Vryheid,

Vereeniging, Verlarenheid, Vrede, Rust-en-Vrede, Rust-en-Vreugd, Blydschap, Patensie, Benoudheid, Toekomst, Moedverloor, Geluk, Onrus, Oorwinning: (most of these are unfortunately beyond the scope of the present text.)

Note: Abstract nouns do occasionally combine with other, usually topographical common nouns. See 4d.

3. Certain proper names of persons are used as place names: Elliot, Colenso, Wepener, Herschel, De Wet, Bathurst, Durban, Petrus Steyn, Reitz, Harrismith, Ladysmith, all of which naturally must have some particular historical significance in their districts. Such names, obviously, can have no justifiable place as formatives in a dictionary reflecting as they do purely encyclopaedic historical material. Also the 'who' and 'why' of names of this type are extensively dealt with in anecdotal and historical works such as those of C. Graham Botha, Charles Pettman and P. J. Nienaber.

4. The structure in which two common nouns combine is probably one of the most frequent. This N+N structure may take varying forms:
(a) Two nouns with +topographical feature, e. g. Kuilsrivier, Kloofnek, Kranskop, Velddrift, Fonteinskloof, Kransfontein, Strands Kloof, Strandfontein.

Note: A single +topographical noun may occur as a place name, e. g. Kloof, Koppies (rare). See also 10.

- (b) The name of some growing thing - plant, tree or flower, +flora with a +topographical noun. e. g. Palmietfontein, Waboonskraal, Melkbosstrand, Rietpoel, Leliésfontein, Keurboomsrivier, Melkhoutkraal, Boegoeberg, Granaatboskolk.

Note: Occasionally single plant names occur as place names, e. g. Wonderboom, Wittebome, Palmiet, Bluegums, Suuranys, Kiepersol, Haakdoring, Maroelaboom.

- (c) The name of a living thing, mammal, bird, fish, reptile or insect, +fauna with a +topographical noun. Many of these, presumably recall specific events which remain now in such forms as Olifantsfontein, Leeukraal, Wolwehoek, Tiervlei, Tygerberg, Slangrivier, Haartebeestekuil, Rhenosterkop, Stompneusbaai, Kabeljousrivier, Elandskloof, Kiewietskuil, Ystervarkfontein, Papiésvlei.

Note: Occasionally +fauna nouns occur singly as place names, e. g. Malgas, Loerie, Springbok, Pofadder, Bleshoender.

- (d) A noun with the feature +abstract with a +topographical noun: e. g. Vredefort, Hoopstad, Genadendal, Groot Sorgfontein, Spytfontein, Benoudheidsfontein, Twyfelspoort.

5. The structure Adjective + Noun occurs in numerous variations. While the adjectives are of several types the nouns are most frequently, though not invariably +topographical.

- (a) Colour adjective with a noun normally +topographical. e. g. Groenkloof, Groenvlei, Witsand, Witfontein, Witbank, Blouberg,

Bloukrans, Roodeberg, Roodepoort, Roodekrantz, Rooiberg, Swartberg, Swartland, Swartrivier, Vaalkop, Vaalhoek, Vaalplaas.

(b) 'Other quality' Adjective with a noun, normally but not always +topographical:

e.g. Noupoot, Breederivier, Brak Rivier, Kromdraai, Verkeerde-vlei, Hollaagte, Helderberg, Grootfontein, Skoongesig, Mooi Uitsig, Klaarwater, Bonteheuvel, Jammerdrif, Kaallaagte, or occasionally +abstract e.g. Goedgeloof, Goedemoed, Langverdriet.

Note 1: Occasionally a single, poignant adjective can constitute a place name, e.g. Hoopvol, Dankbaar, Moedig, Behulpzaam, Rustig.

Note 2: Some adjectives of the Adjective +N structures occur in both their inflected (attributive), and uninflected forms, e.g. Droëvlakte, Droogas, Stillewater, Stilbaai, Kleinemonde, Kleinmond, Platberg, Platteklip, Langebaan, Langkloof. This may well be a reflection of what Professor J. Smuts regards as the evolutionary process of the attributive inflection of adjectives in Afrikaans.¹

Note 3: Such adjectives (see 6 below) as bo, onder, voor, and agter, which can function grammatically as prepositions or adverbs as well as adjectives, occur varyingly in place names (though not usually as adverbs) e.g. Voorbaai, Boplaas, Agterplaas, or in the inflected superlative form - Onderstepoort, Onderstedoring. See also 6.

Note 4: The reverse structure N + adjective seems rare. The N (+topo) + adjective of Koppiealleen, and N. (+flora) + adjective of Boompiealleen are the only occurrences of this type so far noted.

6. Combinations taking either the form Preposition + Noun, or Noun + Preposition.

These are, I think, fairly uncommon and the 'Prepositions' in the grammatical category are marked as A.P.A. (Adjective, Preposition, Adverb) to indicate their variable grammatical behaviour. Examples of these structures are: Waterval-onder, Waterval-boven, Bo-Kouga, Onder-Kouga, Doordrift, Underberg, Ager-Sneeuberg, Onder-Smoordrift, Onder-Papegaaiberg.

Note: It would seem that when bo, onder and agter function as prepositions they are separated, usually by hyphens, from their nouns, and either precede or follow them.² In other combinations they appear to be adjectives. See 5, note 3. Other prepositions so far noted precede the noun in the ordinary prepositional phrase order.

1. J. Smuts. Die Byvoeglike Verbuiging in Afrikaans.
Taalfasette 10, 1969.

2. With a possible exception in Boverwaching.

7. Combination of a Numeral (either Cardinal or Ordinal) + Noun, (usually +topographical): these occur in both Afrikaans and English Names, e. g. Driefontein, Tweespruit, Driewerwe, Two Streams, Seven Fountains, Vier-en-twintig-riviere, Derdehoek, Eersterivier.
Note: The enkel of Enkeldoorn can perhaps be regarded as a 'near numeral.'¹
8. A Noun or Proper Name in combination with a Direction which either precedes, or more commonly in South Africa, follows it, both in Afrikaans and English: e. g. Riebeek-Oos, Barkly East, Somerset East, Somerset West, Noordhoek, Noordeinde, Wesdriefontein, Suider-Paarl.
9. The name of a Tribe or Nation in combination with, normally prefixed to, a Noun which is usually +topographical. This is a minor category but such structures occur frequently enough to merit mention: e. g. Hottentot's Holland, Boesmanshoek, Franschhoek, Fransmanshoek, Gouritzrivier, Outeniquastrand, Kaffer Drift.
10. Article plus Noun as a place name structure occurs usually with the Dutch form of the definite article, e. g. De Aar, De Doorns, De Gracht, De Hoek, De Hoop, De Rust, De Wildt, Het Kruis, but also with the Afrikaans form often with a single +topographical noun, e. g. Die Bos, Die Oog, Die Put; also Die Vlug, Die Hel. One might here compare 'the Berg' (Drakensberg) and 'the Bay' (die Baai), Port Elizabeth. Although these show a general tendency to be combinations with +topographical nouns, it is evident that the +abstract nouns, e. g. Die Hoop, De Rust, are represented, also the +flora in De Doorns.
Note 1: This structure occurs also in French names in South Africa: La Cotte, La Motte, La Plaisante, La Mercy, Le Chasseur, La Fontaine.
Note 2: This apparent structure may also be seen in some Proper Name + Noun forms, e. g. De Mistkraal, De Klerk, De Wet which cannot of course be regarded as true examples of structure 10, but of structure 1, or 3 (qv).
11. Structures containing Verbs: These are not common and may contain nouns or pronouns, e. g. Vegkop, Soekmekaar, Hou Hoek, Helpmekaar, Keerom, Verdwaalkloof, or be single imperative verbs such as Uitkyk,¹ Dwaal¹ or negative imperatives such as Twist-Niet or Terg-Niet.
Note: With the exception of Soebatsfontein and Verdwaalkloof - in which verdwaal may be an adjective - the verb structures so far noted appear to be, or to contain, imperatives.
12. Adverb plus Participle: This structure is not as rare as might be expected, being the only one which does not normally contain a noun. However, the actual adverbs which precede the participles seem to be

1. Uitkyk may also be a noun, cf Uitsig, so may Dwaal.

relatively few: wel-, ver-, wyd-, goed-, lang-, gou-, nooit- possibly mis-, as in Vergelegen, Welgelegen, Ververlêe, Wydgelêe, Welgegend, Welverdiend, Langverwacht, Nooitgedacht, Welgevonde, Goedgevonden, Goedgegun also Misgund and Langgewens.

Note 1: It is possible for the participle to combine with a pronoun or other particle, e.g. Allesverloren, Nietverdiend, in the case of the participle of a transitive verb.

Note 2: The participle without the adverb may be prefixed by the negative morpheme on- e.g. Ongelegen, Onverwacht.

These twelve structures with their variants and exceptions, though fairly numerous, may not be exhaustive, and others may well emerge from further research, as may a more satisfactory method of classification. For example the 'Singleton' might perhaps be regarded as a separate structure for each separate word class. Thus:

'Singletons'	(a) N. Prop	e.g. Petrus Steyn
	(b) N. <u>+abstr.</u>	e.g. Eensaamheid
	(c) N. <u>+fauna</u>	e.g. Pofadder
	(d) N. <u>+flora</u>	e.g. Kiepersol
	(e) Adjective	e.g. Hoopvol
	(f) Verb	e.g. Dwaal
	[(g) N. <u>+topo</u>	e.g. Kloof]

Similarly the structures containing verbs or their participles might well be differently treated.

The classification of place name structures here described, therefore, is only tentative, but it does, I think, serve as an illustration of both the semantic and grammatical variety of the formatives which I consider to be within the province of the dialect lexicographer. It should also show, I hope, that it must be part of his job to provide the necessary non-historical information to interpret a fair number of them and to provide a categorised and separate list of those included for the benefit of any reader or traveller who requires to see the collection as a whole.¹

Note: Regretfully the indigenous African² and Khoisan language formatives must be regarded as beyond the scope of this work, being more properly the field of African and Khoisan language experts than that of the dialect lexicographer. The Khoisan language place names have been dealt with in detail by G.S. Nienaber and P.E. Raper in a recent HSRC publication, to which I have unfortunately not had access, Khoekhoense Plekname; and earlier in Chapters I and II of the Revd Chas Pettman's South African Place Names (1931)

1. There are just under three hundred of these formatives listed in 4.2, Category 27.
2. Chapter III of the Revd Chas Pettman's South African Place Names (1931) is devoted to Bantu Place Names.

The categorised list represents, as do the structures, one way of treating the material. Pettman's exhaustive appendix of nouns and adjectives is a case in point. Pettman divides the nouns to which I have assigned the feature +topographical into Heights, Flats, Waters, Depressions, Erections and Enclosures and General, six elegant divisions where I have used only one. Abstract nouns are not reflected in his appendix but several, as he puts it 'uncomely' names, such as Moordkuil, and 'more euphonious' ones like Weenen, Benaauwdheidsfontein and Langverdriet are dealt with in the chapter on Dutch Place Names. The nouns in his two chapters on names derived from the flora, and those from the fauna, are very numerous but are not listed in this Appendix of Substantival Elements which contains only those six groups of + topographical nouns mentioned above. Those names from French, English, German, Portuguese, Bantu, Bushman, Hottentot, Greek and Hebrew, and the derivations of Proper Name Place names, which are of course beyond the scope of this work, are all meticulously handled by him.

The 'Adjectival Elements', as he calls them in his Appendix, Pettman divides into Dimensions, Colour, Shape, Quality, Position and Numerals. As many of these 'Adjectival Elements' are nouns, noun-modifiers or prepositions, this is probably, for 1975 as opposed to 1931, a less sound categorisation than that of the nouns.

The scheme laid out here is of course not devised for a full scale piece of onomastic research such as Pettman's, and is offered only as a means of incorporating valuable and significant material into a dialect dictionary. The other weakness is that 'special occasion' place names have no place in it. Names like Bobbejaanstert, Putsonderwater, Konstabel Jongensklip, Voëlgeraas, Hondgeblaf, Ezeljag, Tweebuffels-met-een-koeël-doodgeskiet-fontein, Derm, Bandelierskop, Rokoptel and Skilpadtepel (surely non est), cannot be featured here, and those carrying the aura of 'old, unhappy far-off things and battles long ago' - like Post Retief and Fort Mistake - are lost to the lexicographer.

Note 1: Where a formative is so far noted as being only prefixed to other items it is followed by a hyphen, or as suffixed, preceded by one. If it occurs both as a prefix and a suffix one hyphen precedes it and another follows it: e. g. -krans-

Note 2: The numeral of the place name Category 27, with the letter * signifying which type of formative it is, precedes definition of the item e. g. -bron- [br3n] n. 27a

* These are listed with the abbreviations in Section IIC p. 199.

References:

These appear in greater detail in the bibliography.

Burchell's Travels, Vol, I 1822

Thompson's Travels, Vols I and II 1827

Rudyard Kipling, The Five Nations 1903

C. Graham Botha, Place Names in the Cape Province, 1926

Charles Pettman, South African Place Names, 1931

P. J. Nienaber, Suid Afrikaanse Pleknaamwoordeboek, Deel 1, 1963

B.P. and Shell Road Maps : (no dates) Place Name Lists.

Bosman, van der Merwe and Hiemstra, Tweetalige Woordeboek.

Abel Coetzee, 'Ons Plaas-en Plekname', Buurman, Junie-Augustus
1973.

Other References:

Webster's Third International Dictionary

Webster's Seventh New Collegiate Dictionary

American Heritage Dictionary, Full and paperbacked Editions

Charles Pettman, Africanderisms, 1913

Pauline Smith, The Beadle, The Little Karoo

Telephone Directories.

Post Office Code List.

4.5 Cross-dialect References in the text

One of the problems of dialect lexicography, indeed of dialect study as a whole, is what might be described as its isolative quality. Dialect dictionaries and other linguistic studies of dialect tend to be strongly compartmentalised. This is, admittedly, to a great extent the raison d'être of any one of them, and this work, compared with dictionaries of Americanisms, Canadianisms, Australian English, Anglo Indian and even Jamaican English, is a latecomer in the field in which the tendency is to isolate rather than to integrate¹.

South African speakers of English as L1, roughly 1.6 million, including the Coloureds, form a relatively small speech-community compared with the major English-speaking populations of North America, Australia and even New Zealand², and the English of South Africa has been comparatively little worked over. This is particularly noticeable in comparison with major works on the English of Anglo India³ and of course Jamaica⁴.

In this text, (a point mentioned in the formal introduction to

1. Data is at present being collected for a Dictionary of Newfoundland English by workers at the Memorial University of Newfoundland, St John's Newfoundland Canada. This is described by G. M. Story, W. Kirwin and J. D. A. Widdowson in Lexicography in English, pp. 104-108 (see McDavid and Duckert).

2. Population 2,640,000.

3. Hobson-Jobson by Yule and Burnell, and Indian Words in English by G. Subba Rao.

4. Dictionary of Jamaican English by F. G. Cassidy and R. B. Le Page.

the dictionary), my object has been, wherever possible, or apposite, to make cross references to terms in use in other English speech communities for contrast or comparison, to indicate in a small way where the South African touches upon or fits into the overall picture of English dialects. Obviously a large scale cross-dialectal study to integrate major tendencies and concepts in the dialects of English is not really within the province of the lexicographer, and equally obviously beyond the scope of a work of this size. Also, like the categorisation of the vocabulary, this may well be regarded as lexicology rather than lexicography.

On this small scale, though, the insertion in certain entries in the text of an item or usage form from another dialect can, and I think does, add quite considerably to the interest of both the individual entries and of the text as a whole, giving as it does a glimpse of a de-isolative intention in this particular treatment of the vocabulary of English in South Africa.

A close study of the roughly 1700 items of the Australian and New Zealand Supplement¹ to the Pocket Oxford Dictionary of 1969 revealed enough interesting parallels to inspire a search for similar British and American items. Fairly close reading of the Dictionary of Jamaican English by Cassidy and le Page, and the Dictionary of Canadianisms edited by Walter S. Avis, has greatly increased this corpus of comparative material. Sampling of the Dictionary of Americanisms of Mitford Mathews has been less profitable, possibly because of the vastness of the volume and because of the particularly large amount of specialist naturalist vocabulary in it. Hobson-Jobson, the glossary of Anglo-Indian usage, although useful, is slightly exotic for detailed comparative study, and the Anglo-Indian terms included in the experimental dictionary (nabob, nullah, sahib, memsahib, etc.) are commonly known like wallah and dhobi rather than drawn from this text². As far as I am aware no studies exist of the forms of English of St. Helena³, or of Hong Kong, both of which, in the light of having had St. Helena servants in my parental home, and of a recent week or so in Hong Kong on a visit to the Far East, seem exceptionally interesting. Reading the daily paper of Victoria, the South China Morning Post, and listening to English speakers there, one is aware of well-assimilated Chinese borrowings in common use

1. Prepared by R.W. Burchfield.

2. Since writing this G. Subba Rao's Indian Words in English (Oxford 1969) has come to hand: see appended list on p. 225.

3. Or, presumably that of Tristan da Cunha.

(pak-pai, walla-walla, amah, tai-pan, sam-fu, ricksha) comparable with press usage of borrowed forms in South Africa.

The final section of the bibliography gives texts used in this part of the work - included are writings of Han Suyin, James Clavell and John Gordon Davis, for Hong Kong - of E. M. Forster and John Masters for Anglo-India¹ - Henry Lawson and C. J. Dennis for Australia, and the Anne (of Green Gables) books for girls for some of the usage of Canada. The dictionaries of other forms of English appear in Section I of the Bibliography and linguistic studies such as Albert C. Marckwardt's American English, Sidney J. Baker's The Australian Language and John O'Grady's most entertaining Aussie English appear in Section II Other Reference Works.

Obvious omissions here are West Africa and East Africa. Although there is a large and increasing body of West African writing in English such as the novels of writers such as Chinua Achebe and plays of Wole Soyinka, I have not attempted to tap this, with the exception of the irresistible term 'been to' comparable with the derisive Afrikaans usage of O. W. O. (ons was oorsee) quoted at the entry for overseas. There are two reasons for leaving this field almost unexplored: one is the obvious time factor, the other, the only partially valid fact that English is not the mother tongue of Achebe, Soyinka and their fellow writers. I say partially valid because much of the South African writing examined has been written by persons whose mother tongue is or was not English: Uys Krige, H. C. Bosman, Todd Matshikiza, R. R. R. Dhlomo, Ezekiel Mphahlele and Peter Abrahams have written in English as their language of choice, just as have the West African writers, and some indeed as in the case of Uys Krige and R. R. R. Dhlomo, have written in their mother tongue as well. The English of English-speaking Colonials in East Africa has also been neglected, in spite of the fact that it contains, or contained numerous well-assimilated Swahili borrowings in daily currency, regularly observable in the speech of 'expatriate' East African English residents: examples of these are the common greeting jambo, the farewell kwa-heri similar to hamba kahle, shenzi a skelm or other low grade object, also used adjectivally, pumbavu equivalent of nompara or domkop, maridadi meaning smart, excellent or very 'pushed up'(comparable with bakgat) and the expression of resignation sharia mungu, God's business. Again the time factor has prevented detailed examination of works by such writers as Robert Ruark, Joy Adamson or Jane van Lawick Goodall. Apart from this, in spite of the beauty of the Swahili language which I did once try to learn on a long East Coast sea voyage, Colonial East Africa has, at any rate in my mind, the sad air of a 'has-been' never to be seen again, like the

1. Also G. Subba Rao's Indian Words in English (Oxford) 1969.

British Raj in India. The Indian languages, however, have far more deeply infiltrated the English language and from as early as the seventeenth century. Few English speakers know that they owe, among many others, the following words to their influence: shampoo, pyjamas, dungarees, cummerbund, mufti, calico, chintz, seersucker, khaki, thug, lilac, bobbery-pack, chit, tattoo, dinghy, catamaran, toddy, cushy, veranda, blighty, jungle, loot, cot, bangle, coir, teak, jute.

Although this part of the work is clearly beyond the bounds of what might be called the 'writ' of the lexicographer, especially the dialect lexicographer applied to the usage of a single speech community, it has had a certain excitement to it which has frequently provided leaven in what is inevitably, at times, a stodgy task. Some examples to illustrate the types of cross references given follow here. For simplicity the South African term is placed first in each case, and items not included in the text of Part II are bracketed.^x [Where the same word is used in other forms of English, e. g. Scottish kist, neuk Australian lay-by, fossick, this has as far as possible been indicated in the dictionary].

People:

abakwetha /umkwetha	Australian <u>kipper</u>
aia	Hong Kong <u>amah</u> [Anglo-Indian <u>ayah</u>]
banana boy	Australian <u>bananalander</u> (Queenslander)
bergie	Australian <u>bushy/ie</u>
buti/boetie	Australian <u>binghi</u> , Jamaican <u>baada</u>
doedie	Australian <u>brush</u> , <u>sheila</u> , United States <u>broad</u> etc.
dominee	Canadian <u>dominie</u> (schoolmaster, usually Scottish, or a Presbyterian minister)
domkop/mompara	Australian <u>drongo</u> , <u>galah</u> , <u>dilly</u> East African (m)pumbavu (pombafa)
Flying Angels (Harry's)	Australian <u>flying doctor</u>
landdrost	Canadian <u>district warden</u>
maat	Australian <u>mate</u> , <u>cobber</u>
mlungu	United States <u>whitey</u> , Hong Kong <u>gwai-lo</u> , Jamaican <u>backra</u>
Outa-, Aia-	Hong Kong <u>Ah-</u> (prefix)
poor white	United States <u>red neck</u> , <u>white trash</u> Jamaican <u>white-jeg</u>
randlord	Hong Kong <u>tai-pan</u> , Anglo-Indian <u>nabob</u>

rondganger [Australian swagman, United States bum],
skelm [East African shenzi n.]
sugar baron Canadian lumber king, sawdust nobility,
British merchant prince
togt labourer Canadian tripman
verkrampste Australian wowser, Canadian mossback

Living things:

agteros / afterox Australian poler, Jamaican tongue cattle
blaasop Jamaican balloon fish
brak Australian mong, Anglo-Indian pye-dog
fat lamb Australian fat(s)
grunter Jamaican -grunt (numerous compounds)
Australian pig fish, trumpeter fish
hansie (calf) Australian poddy calf, United States and
Canadian dogie (motherless calf in
a range herd)
hanslam Australian poddy lamb, sook, Jamaican
cossie
jacopever Australian Sergeant Baker
leervis Australian leather jacket
mooinoientjie Jamaican Nancy/None-so-Pretty
slyt sheep Australian gummy

Growing things:

blushing bride Jamaican shame-(a)-lady
kaffir- / kaffer- (prefix) United States nigger-, Canadian Indian-
kremetartboom Australian cream of tartar tree
steekgras Canadian speargrass, Australian porcupine
grass (spinifex)
stinkblaar United States Jimson weed, stinkweed,
Apple of Peru; [Anglo Indian dewtry]
wag-'n-bietjie Australian wait-a-while
yesterday-today-and- Jamaican today-tomorrow mango
tomorrow

Food, drink and smoking:

askoek Australian damper, devil on the coals;
Jamaican bammy [Canadian
sourdough bannock]
biltong Canadian dry meat [pemmican¹, often

1. Dictionary of Canadianisms, edit. Walter S. Avis.

	thought to be the equivalent of biltong, consists of <u>dry meat</u> , powdered and mixed with fat], United States <u>jerky</u> , <u>charqui</u> , <u>jerked beef</u> , Jamaican <u>jerked hog</u> , <u>jerked meat</u> .
bobotie	Canadian <u>rubaboo</u> (rough soup) [Anglo Indian <u>pish pash</u> (rough soup)]
bokkems	Canadian <u>Digby chips</u> (salted, dried herring fillets)
braaivleis	United States <u>barbecue</u> (also British) Australian <u>cook-out</u> (also United States)
doodgooi	British <u>sad</u> (cake, bread etc.), Jamaican <u>dough-dough</u> (<u>do-do</u>)
dop	Australian <u>nobbler</u> , Canadian <u>hooker</u> , <u>snort smash</u> , United States <u>slug</u>
green mamba	British (navy) <u>starboard light</u> (creme de menthe)
kudu milk / tiger's milk	Canadian <u>moose milk</u> , <u>wolf juice</u> , Australian <u>snake juice</u>
mealie bread (green)	United States <u>corn pone</u>
mebos	Jamaican <u>dosi</u> / <u>dolsi</u> (sweetmeat of mango or guava)
moes	United States <u>mush</u>
putu	Jamaican <u>ton-ton</u> , United States <u>hominy</u> (<u>grits</u>)
stompie	Australian <u>bumper</u>
vaaljapie	Australian <u>red ned</u> (bulk claret)
witblits	United States <u>white lightning</u> , <u>moonshine</u> , Canadian <u>whisky blanc</u>
zoll	Canadian <u>rollie</u>

Structures, vehicles, shops:

bottle store	[British <u>wine merchant</u>]
chorrie	Australian <u>bomb</u> , United States <u>jalopy</u>
Greek shop	Jamaican <u>Chiney shop</u> (Chinese)
kraal	Jamaican <u>-crawl</u> , <u>hog-crawl</u> , <u>turtle-crawl</u> etc.
pondok	Australian <u>humpy</u> , <u>goondie</u> , Jamaican <u>wappum-bappum</u> (various spellings)
scotch cart	Canadian <u>dump car</u>

shebeen Australian sly grog shop, shanty [United States speakeasy]
 skerm Australian wurlie
 trek wagon United States prairie schooner

Places and Place Names:

backveld Australian outback, back blocks, United States boondocks, Canadian (and United States) the sticks
 bushveld Canadian bushland, Australian bush
 donga Anglo Indian nullah, Australian gully
 dorp United States podunk
 -gat- Canadian trou
 krans Canadian rampart
 laagte/leegte British and United States bottom
 pram- Canadian mamelle (breast-shaped hill)
 thornveld Australian mulga country
 vlei Canadian marais

Other:

Anglikaans Canadian Franglish, Franglais.
 Fanakalo Canadian Chinook jargon (mixed traders' language)
 kitchen Dutch Canadian Monkey French
 kitchen kaffir [East African kisetla (settler language)]
 berg wind Canadian Chinook wind, Australian brickfielder
 Cape Doctor Jamaican Doctor (wind) from the sea
 Undertaker (wind) from the land
 monkey's wedding Jamaican devil rain¹
 gesondheid New Zealand kia-ora
 go well / hamba kahle [East African kwa-heri], Jamaican walk good (drive good).
 hamba Canadian mush on (to persons)
 loop Canadian mush² (to animals)
 so waar, true as God Australian dinkum
 vasbyt, bite one's teeth Australian crack hardy / hearty, British bite on the bullet, etc.

1. cf. Dutch Kermis in de Hel.

2. from marchez

Jan Company	Canadian <u>John Company</u> (Hudson Bay Company)
blueback	United States <u>greenback</u>
half jack	Canadian <u>mickey</u> (12 fluid oz bottle)
muid	Canadian <u>minot</u> , Canada <u>bushel</u>
scale	Australian <u>jackshay</u> , (quart pot)
baklei	Australian <u>barney</u>
braak	Australian <u>break in</u> (of virgin soil)
brom	[St. Helena <u>crib</u>], Australian <u>go crook</u> , <u>go lemony</u>
donder	Australian <u>stoush</u>
drag	Australian <u>chew the rag</u> (sulk), United States, British <u>gripe</u> etc.
by = at	Australian <u>on</u> (a place)
too good / too much (African)	Jamaican <u>too good</u>
bruidskis	United States <u>hope chest</u> , Australian <u>glory box</u> , British <u>bottom drawer</u>
goeters / goodies	Canadian <u>iktas</u>
crackers	Canadian <u>mitashes</u> (leather leggings)
goëlery	Canadian <u>jongelerie</u>
indaba	United States, Canadian <u>pow-wow</u> , New Zealand <u>korero</u>
u/mafufunyana	Canadian <u>piblokto</u> (hysteria or madness among Eskimo women)
throw the bones	Australian <u>point the bone</u> , Canadian <u>throw medicine</u>
babelaas	United States <u>katzenjammer</u> (possibly sectional, Yiddish)
horries	Australian <u>the dingbats</u> (delirium tremens etc.)
poegaai	Australian <u>stonkerd</u>
bollemakiesie	Australian <u>head over turkey</u>
boep	Australian <u>bingey</u> , Jamaican <u>bang-belly</u> , <u>bang gut</u>
bakgat	[East African <u>maridadi</u>]
bleddy/blerry	Australian <u>plurry</u> , British <u>blurry</u>
lekker	Australian <u>beaut</u> , <u>bonzer</u> , <u>bottler</u>
oes, scurvy etc.	[East African <u>shenzi</u> adj.]

Additional cross references between South African and Anglo Indian loan words:

It has not been possible to insert the following items in the text of Part II on account of the problems of typing them into completed pages^{1 x}. They will, however, be added by hand in the final version for the printer and are therefore appended here.

<u>South African</u>	<u>Anglo Indian</u>
egte	pukka
basela / bonsella	baksheesh
bohai	bobbery
smear (mis)	leep (to wash with cowdung and water)
spoor, spoorer	pug, puggee
borrie	purree (yellow colouring matter)
tammeletjie	misree (sugar candy)
mlungu	Gora (white man, Englishman)
dagga	bhang (hemp) ganja
kloof	tangi (gorge, defile)
skelm	nut-cut (natkhat, rogue)
tronk	cho(o)ky
katel	cot (light bedstead)
afdak	godown (warehouse)
skinder (n.)	gup (gossip)
martevaam	martaban (vessel of peculiar pottery)
Secunde	Naib (deputy governor)
fundi	pundit (teacher, expert)
dam	tank (pool, lake, artificial reservoir)
skerm/pondok	pandal (shed, booth or arbour for temporary use)
spog	buck (bragging talk)
krans bee	dingar (wild bee)
opskud	jildi (be quick)
skans	sungar (breastwork of stone)

The foregoing lists give a limited but I hope representative sample of the type of cross references produced by this part of the study. It has not been possible to list them all, or to list them systematically as they have been inserted into the text at various times and not in alphabetical sequence or even one dialect at a time. The sample lists follow a rough categorisation similar to that upon which 4.2 is based.

1. The source of the material, Indian Words in English by G. Subba Rao (Oxford 1969), came to hand too late for their inclusion.

Note:

The terms are all inserted into the entries in the same way namely cf. Austr. _____, U.S. _____, Canad. _____, following the definition of the South African word, and preceding the illustrative quotation. In certain cases where the cross reference has been an afterthought or has been found too late for proper insertion in the text an asterisked foot- or marginal-note has been used instead. Only in a few cases is the meaning or an explanation given of the compared term e.g. pram- ... cf. Canad. mamelle, a breast shaped hill, or jacopever ... cf. Austr. Sergeant Baker, a highly coloured fish.

In conclusion I would like to add that cross dialect study, even on so small a scale, has proved interesting enough to be a fruitful field, I hope, for future research.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Introductory note:

The bibliography which follows includes both reference works consulted in the preparation of the commentary and the text, and the sources from which illustrative material has been drawn.

It is proposed that, substantially, the same bibliography should appear in the dictionary, since probably no good purpose would be served by an attempt to present it in a different form possibly combined and alphabetised, as opposed to the sections in which it is divided here namely:

- I Dictionaries
- II Other Reference Works
- III Newspapers and Magazines read and/or quoted
- IV Word Sources read and/or quoted
- V Other sources.

Citations

Following the practice of the major Oxford Dictionaries the date is placed last in each case. In the event of an edition or impression other than the first having been the one used, the date of publication, if available, follows the title, and the date of the edition quoted or consulted follows the name of the publisher and place of publication.

The form followed, except in the cases of dictionaries where the name of the company e.g. Webster, Harrap, Cassell is more prominent than that of the editor or compiler, is as follows:

Author's name, initials or first name(s)	<u>Title</u> Other details if any Publisher, Place of Publication, Date.
---	--

This form gives somewhat more detail than the usual Oxford Dictionary citation, though when word sources have very long subtitles these are usually omitted. For reference works these are normally retained.

Reading

In Section IV works personally read and consulted by the writer are marked with an asterisk for the purpose of giving an idea of the scope of reading done for this work. Those works not read in their entirety are marked with an asterisk in parentheses. Those unmarked have been read by others, but quotations taken from them appear in the text.

I. Dictionaries

These include Dictionaries of English, Afrikaans and Dutch and foreign language dictionaries used or consulted in the compilation of

the text; also dialect dictionaries or dialect supplements to other dictionaries which have been used for cross references between South African English and other forms of English, American, Canadian, Scottish, Australian, New Zealand, Anglo Indian etc.

In this section are the Latin and Greek lexicons used and what might be called 'sectional' language dictionaries: those of slang, vulgarisms (B.E.Gent, Grose and Partridge); that of the Low Dutch element in the English vocabulary prepared by Bense; and the Oxford Dictionary of Etymology. All other reference works, including Daniel Jones's Pronouncing Dictionary of English, used in conjunction with the phonetics texts, and two legal dictionaries, appear in Section II. Section I then, consists almost exclusively of 'language' dictionaries, bilingual, dialect or explanatory.

II. Other Reference Works

These are listed alphabetically by authors or editors and no attempt has been made to group them by subjects e.g. Phonetics, Place Names, Biology, Law, History etc..

Works used for reference in these subjects are also quoted in the text of the Compact Dictionary and where this is so the title appears in the list of word sources as well. This has been inevitable in the case of such works as the Cambridge History of the British Empire Vol. VIII South Africa^x, The Handbook for Farmers in South Africa 1937, Common Names of South African Plants 1966, standard texts on birds, fish and trees and Pettman's Africanderisms, which have been used extensively for both information and material for quotations. The unpublished work of Dr. C.P. Swart, Africanderisms: A supplement to the Rev. Charles Pettman's Glossary of South African Colloquial Words and Phrases and other Names, has been drawn on for quotations. Some duplication therefore in this section and in Section IV does occur.

Although all dictionaries 'proper' are listed in Section I, Section II includes Boshoff and Nienaber's Afrikaanse Etimologieë, Pettman's Africanderisms (described by him as a 'glossary'), M.D.W. Jeffries's Supplementary Afrikanderisms which appeared in sections in Africana Notes and News, the various issues of the Index of English Usage in S. A. by Beeton and Dorner, and Dr C.P. Swart's work mentioned above.

Roget's Thesaurus, which has been used in connection with categorisation and the taxonomic approach generally, and Daniel Jones's Everyman's Pronouncing Dictionary of English used in the designing of the pronunciation system, are likewise listed here, as are two legal dictionaries, Bell's S. Afr. Legal Dictionary Supplement 1957, and the S. Afr. Judicial Dictionary of J. J. L. Sisson 1960, which latter has been quoted in the text as well as consulted

on certain points of legal usage and appears in Section IV also.

The other texts in this section are for the most part standard texts in linguistics and dialect, and standard indispensable specialist reference works on Fauna and Flora, History and Geography and even cookery.

III Newspapers and Magazines

The press and illustrated papers have been important major sources of material quoted in the text: reports in the daily press produce political terms and the names of officials and institutions; recipes, the names of dishes or ingredients; gardening articles, the names of plants, and fiction and advertisement colloquialisms as well. A source of numerous slang items has been a feature devoted to South African expressions at the most colloquial level - Backchat by Blossom Broadbeam in Darling. This has produced printed instances of words usually encountered only in speech. Technical or geographical articles in South African Panorama have also provided a number of useful items and the Farmer's Weekly, fiction, copy or advertisements, has been a never-failing source of supply. Post and Drum regularly read have given many examples of urban African usage. Papers seen less often like The Leader and The Graphic, both Durban Indian papers, Bona, a less sophisticated magazine than Drum, The World (formerly Bantu World), and the Cape Herald, an entirely Coloured paper, have all contributed to the illustrative material. The black press in English is, I hope, well represented.

Of the daily papers it is most usually the local ones which are quoted, and of the Sunday papers, the Sunday Times. It is unfortunately not possible to 'keep up' with regular reading of as many papers as one would wish.

IV. Word Sources read and/or quoted:

This is, as far as possible, a comprehensive list of the various sources from which the illustrative quotations have been drawn, including those in Section II. It does not however include those dictionaries from Section I which are quoted verbatim in certain cases for purposes of etymology or other comment. The list appears here as it will in the draft Dictionary itself with one difference only, namely that the titles of works personally read by the writer are asterisked as mentioned above.

Other works have been read or partly read by members of the staff of the Dictionary of South African English, Institute for the Study of English in Africa, Rhodes University, members of the Dictionary Committee, or in some instances by outside readers or friends of the Dictionary project. The quotations on file have been at my disposal in the compilation of the draft Dictionary so a very broad field is reflected here, and quotations from the

reading of a number of people have been used. [See acknowledgements]

Numerous quotations also, as was mentioned in the note on Section II of this bibliography, have been taken from reference works on various aspects of South Africa which are, accordingly, listed as word sources if they have been used as such.

It may be noted here that titles given in full in this Section are in numerous cases abbreviated in the text in the interests of saving space and in keeping with established precedent.

The sources, apart from the standard works mentioned above, are extremely varied, and include early and contemporary fiction, novels and short stories, poetry, some children's books, diaries and other memoirs ^{and reminiscences,} biographies, histories, anthropological works, works and textbooks on farming and animal husbandry, legal text books, cookery books and numerous early descriptions of the Cape.

Although this text has not been prepared on historical principles very many of the illustrative quotations have been drawn from sources of quite early date.¹ These have been selected usually on the grounds of their intrinsic interest rather than on those of relative antiquity. Certain items, labelled Historical or even Obsolete are likely, in the circumstances, to be illustrated from early texts e.g. travellers' terms such as 'the field' (veld), 'diving goat' (duiker), 'girdle of famine.'² Early texts include the works of travellers and naturalists such as Burchell, Sparrman, Le Vaillant, Thunberg, Alexander, Webster, temporary residents such as Lady Anne Barnard, Lady Duff Gordon, James Ewart, a young officer stationed at the Cape from 1811-1814, and Christopher Webb Smith - an artist and civil servant on furlough from India 1835-1837.

Also included are the works of settlers like Thomas Pringle, Thomas Philipps and H. H. Dugmore and the numerous diaries, chronicles or reminiscences later published - or unpublished - of Jeremiah Goldswain, Thomas Stubbs, James Hancock, James Collett, Sophia Pigot, Eliza Jane Dugmore, Thomas Shone; military memoirs such as the Narrative of Private Buck Adams and James McKay's Reminiscences of the Last Kaffir War, and those of Missionaries such as George Barker, John Ayliff, Jos. Whiteside and William Shaw.

Note: Many of the illustrative quotations have been taken from cards in the files of the Dictionary of South African English on Historical Principles : these have been copied by many hands and the possibility of minor slips in copying of punctuation etc. is always present.

¹ Ladislav Zgusta in his Manual of Lexicography (1971) p208 comments as follows: '... dialect dictionaries are based either on oral material ... on different questionnaires, or on written sources if there are texts written in the dialects, or on both. If there are numerous written texts and if they have a sufficiently long tradition, the respective dialect dictionary will naturally tend to acquire a historical character.'

² (Hunger belt).

DETAILED BIBLIOGRAPHY

I. DICTIONARIES:

- Afrikaanse Woordeboek, Die
W.A.T. Universiteit Stellenbosch 1951
- American Heritage Dictionary
Houghton Mifflin, New York, 1969
- American Heritage Dictionary,
paperback edition, New York, 1970
- Appeltons' New Spanish-English and English
Spanish Dictionary, Arturo Cuyas.
Appelton & Co., London, 1909
- Avis, Walter S. edit. Dictionary of Canadianisms,
W.G. Gage, Toronto, 1967
- Bosman, D.B., van der Merwe, I.W. and Hiemstra, L.W.
Tweetalige Woordeboek,
Sewende Verbeterde Uitgawe, 2de Druk
Nasionale Boekhandel Bpk., Kaapstad,
Bloemfontein, Johannesburg, 1969
Ibid. Tafelberg-Uitgewers Bpk., Kaapstad,
Johannesburg, 1972
- Bosman, D.B., van der Merwe, I.W. and Barnes, S.V.
Tweetalige Skoolwoordeboek
Eighth edition, 1964
- Bense, J.F. Dictionary of the Low Dutch Element in the
English Vocabulary,
Martinus Nijhoff, The Hague, 1939
- Burchfield, R.W. Supplement of Australian and New Zealand Words
in Pocket Oxford Dictionary, 1969 Edition
Oxford, 1969. See also Oxford Dictionaries
and at Onions, C.T.
- Canting Crew, Dictionary of the see Gent, B.E.
- Cassell Compact German-English and English-German
Dictionary,
Eleventh edition, 1947
- Cassell Dutch Dictionary compiled F.P.N. Prick van
Wely 1951
Cassell & Co., London, fourth edition, 1960
- Cassidy, F.G. and le Page, R.B.
Dictionary of Jamaican English,
Cambridge University Press, 1967
- Chambers Twentieth Century English Dictionary
1964 edition.

- de Vries, Jan Nederlands Etymologisch Woordenboek
E.J.Brill, Leiden, 1971
- Doke, C.M. and Vilakazi, B.W. A Zulu English Dictionary
Witwatersrand University Press, 1948
- Friedrichsen, G.W.S. edit. See Onions, C. T.
- Gent, B.E. A New Dictionary of the Terms Ancient and Modern of the Canting Crew
W. Howes, P. Gilbourne and W. Davis, London.
No date but printed, according Encyclopædia Britannica 13th edit., at the end of the sixteenth century.
- Grose, Captain Francis, edit. Eric Partridge
A Classical Dictionary of the Vulgar Tongue
Barnes and Noble, New York, 1963
- Harrap's Shorter French and English Dictionary
edit. J.E. Mansion 1940-1958 London, Toronto, Wellington, Sydney, 1958
- Hoare, Alfred A Short Italian Dictionary, Vol. I
Italian English
Heffer, Cambridge, 1945
- Johnson, Samuel Johnson's Dictionary: A Modern Selection
E. L. McAdam and George Milne, Pantheon.
(Random House) New York, 1963
- Klatt, E. and Klatt, G. Langenscheidt's Pocket Dictionary of the English and German Language
2nd part German-English
1884 Hodder and Stoughton, London
5th edit. 23rd impression, 1959
- Kritzinger, M.S.B., Steyn, H.A., Schoonees, P.C., Cronje, U.J.
Groot Woordeboek
2nd edit., Van Schaik, Pretoria, 1965
- le Page, R.B. See Cassidy, F.G.
- Liddell and Scott Greek English Lexicon
25th edit. 1892
- Matthews, Mitford A Dictionary of Americanisms
University of Chicago Press, 1951
- Novo Dicionario Portatil Portugueza e Ingleza, 1873
- Onions, C.T., Friedrichsen, G.W.W. and Burchfield, R.W.
Oxford Dictionary of English Etymology
Oxford 1966
- Oxford English Dictionaries
(1) The New English Dictionary Vols. I - X.
(2) Oxford English Dictionary, The Shorter, On Historical Principles, third edit., 1933/1950. Little, W., Fowler, H. W., Coulson, J. Revised, Onions, C. T.
(3) Oxford English Dictionary, The Shorter on Historical Principles, revised and edit. Onions, C. T. Etymologies revised by Friedrichsen, G.W.S. Oxford, 1973
(4) Oxford English Dictionary Supplement, Oxford, 1933

- (5) Oxford English Dictionary, A Supplement to the, A-G. edit R. W. Burchfield, Oxford 1972
- (6) Oxford English Dictionary, Concise, Oxford, 1964
- (7) Oxford English Dictionary, Pocket, of Current English, 5th edition, revised by McIntosh, E. Oxford, 1969
- (8) Oxford Dictionary of English Etymology, see Onions, C. T.

Partridge, Eric

A Dictionary of Slang and Unconventional English
5th edition, Macmillan, New York, 1969
See also Grose, Captain Francis

Riddell, Rev. J. E.

A Complete English-Latin and Latin-English Dictionary for the use of Colleges and Schools
London 1849

Scottish National Dictionary
Edit. Grant, Wm., Murison, David D.
Association Edinburgh, commenced 1929
last Vol. 1974, 1st Vol. no date.

Takahashi, M.

Romanized English-Japanese and Japanese-English Dictionary
Taisedo : Kobe 1953 (Taiwan edition)

van Dale

Handwoordenboek Der Nederlandsche Taal
Derde Herzien e Uitgawe, Martinus Nijhoff,
Den Haag, Leiden, 1920.

van Dale

Nieuwe Groot Woordenboek Der Nederlandse Taal
Martinus Nijhoff, Den Haag, Leiden.

van Rijn, C.J.

Dutch-English and English-Dutch Dictionary in the Simplified (Kollewijn) Spelling with the Common Cape-Dutch Words.
Pub. T. Maskew Miller, Cape Town, no date, circa 1905.

Webster's Dictionaries
G. & C. Merriam Company, Springfield, Massachusetts.

- (1) Third New International Dictionary
2 vols. Merriam-Webster, Springfield Massachusetts, 1961
- (2) Third New International Dictionary of the English Language Unabridged
edit. Gore, P.B. Taiwan edition, One volume, 1972
- (3) Seventh New Collegiate Dictionary, 1961
G. & C. Merriam Company, Springfield, Massachusetts.
- (4) Collegiate Dictionary, Fourth Edition (containing a Pronouncing Glossary of Scottish Words and Phrases).
Merriam 1936, Springfield, Massachusetts

- Yule, Col. Henry, and Burnell, Arthur Coke
Hobson Jobson - being a Glossary of Anglo-Indian Colloquial Words and Phrases
edit. William Crooke 1866
Routledge and Kegan Paul, London, 1968,
reprint 1969.
- II. OTHER REFERENCE WORKS [for Addenda to this Section see pp.238-9]
- Abercrombie, David Elements of General Phonetics,
University of Edinburgh Press 1967
- Abercrombie, David The Recording of Dialect Material in
Phonetics in Linguistics
edit. Jones, W.E. and Laver J.
Longman's, London, 1973
- Agriculture and Forestry, Department of Handbook for Farmers in South Africa
edit. Seymore, D.J.
Government Printer, Pretoria, 1937
- Aldridge, M.V. A Pilot Study for a Dictionary of South African
English on Historical Principles
Taalafasette 10, Van Schaik, Pretoria 1969
- Amptelike Plekname in die Unie en Suidwes-
Afrika
Government Printer, Pretoria, 1951
- Amptelike Plekname in die Unie en Suidwes-
Afrika
Aanvullende lys,
Government Printer, Pretoria 1952
- Anderson, Wallace L and Stageberg, Norman C. Introductory Readings on Language
1962 Holt Rinehart and Winston Inc., New York
Revised edit. 1966
- Baker, Sidney J. The Australian Language: an examination of the
English language and English speech as used in
Australia from convict days to the present,
with special reference to the growth of
indigenous idiom and its use by Australian
writers.
2nd edit. Currawaong Pub. Co. Sydney 1966
- Beeton, D.R. and Dorner, Helen edit.
English Usage in Southern Africa 1970-1973
Vol. I No. I June 1970
Vol. I No. II Dec. 1970
Vol. II No. I June 1971
Vol. II No. II Dec. 1971
Vol. III No. I June 1972
Vol. III No. II Dec. 1972
Vol. IV No. I March 1973
Vol. IV No. II June 1973
Printed by the University of South Africa, Pretoria
- Bell South African Legal Dictionary
3rd edition, Butterworth & Co. (Africa) Ltd.,
Durban, 1951
- Bell South African Legal Dictionary Supplement
Butterworth (Africa) Ltd., Durban, 1957
- Biden, Leo Sea Angling Fishes of the Cape
Oxford 1930

- Boshoff, S.P.E., and Nienaber, G.S. Afrikaanse Etimologie
Die Suid Afrikaanse Akademie vir Wetenskap en Kuns, Pretoria 1967
- Botha, C.Graham Place Names in the Cape Province
Juta, Cape Town, no date, circa 1926
- Branford, W.R.G. Aardvark to Zwarthout in Seven Studies in English edit. Roberts, G.
Purnell, Cape Town 1971
- Brookes, Edgar A History of Native Policy in South Africa
Nasionale Pers, Cape Town 1924
- Bughwan, Devamonie An Investigation into the use of English by the Indians in South Africa, UNISA PhD thesis, 1968-1972
- Cambridge History of the British Empire
Vol. VIII South Africa edit. Eric Walker
Cambridge University Press 1936
- Casson, C.F. The Dialect of Jeremiah Goldswain, Albany Settler
Oxford University Press 1955
- Coetzee, Abel Ons Plaas- en Plekname in Buurman, Junie-Augustus 1973
- de Villiers, M. Afrikaanse Klankleer
Fonetiek, Fonologie en Woordbou
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town 1965
- Dorner, Helen and Beeton, D.R. see Beeton, D.R.
- Duckert, Audrey edit. see McDavid, Raven I. Jr.
- Eksteen, L.C. Die Leksikologie van Afrikaans
Taalfasette 1969 No.9
van Schaik, Pretoria
- Eliason, Norman E. Tarheel Talk, A historical study of the English Language in North Carolina to 1860
University of N. Carolina Press, Chapel Hill 1956
- Fanaroff, Deborah South African English Dialect: A Literature Survey, Institute for Languages, Literature and Arts, Human Sciences Research Council, Pretoria 1972
- Fitzsimons, F.W. Snakes of Southern Africa
Maskew Miller 1921
- Fitzsimons, V.F.M. A Field Guide to the Snakes of Southern Africa, Collins, London 1970 *see also p. 237.
- Fransen, H. and Cooke, M.A. The Old Houses of the Cape
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town 1965
- Gill, Eric A First Guide to South African Birds
5th edit. Maskew Miller, Cape Town 1956
- Gimson, A.C. An Introduction to the Pronunciation of English
Edward Arnold, London 1962
- Godfrey, Revd Robert Bird-Lore of the Eastern Cape Province
"Bantu Studies" Monograph Studies Series No.2
Witwatersrand University Press, Johannesburg 1941
- Gordon-Brown, A. South African Year Book and Guide
Robert Hale, London 1951
- Haugen, E. Dialect, Language, Nation 1966 reprinted in Sociolinguistics
edit. Pride, J.B. and Holmes, J.
Penguin 1972
- Headlam, C. edit. The Milner Papers 1897-1899
Cassell, London 1931

- Herrman, L. Note on Cape English Idiom
English Studies in Africa Vol. 2 No. 2
September 1959
- Hopwood, D. South African English Pronunciation
Juta, Cape Town 1928
- International Phonetic Association Principles of the International Phonetic Association
University College London Reprint 1965
- I.S.E.A. Towards a Dictionary of South African English
Institute for the Study of English in Africa,
Rhodes University, Grahamstown 1971
- Jackson, P.B.N. Common and Scientific Names of Freshwater Fishes of Southern Africa
Piscator No. 90, Autumn 1974 [^]
- Jeffreys, M.D.W. Afrikanderisms I, II, III.
I Africana Notes and News, Vol. 16 June 1964
II Africana Notes and News, Vol. 17 No. 5
March 1967
III Africana Notes and News, Vol. 19 No. 1
March 1970
- Jones, Daniel An Outline of English Phonetics
Heffer, Cambridge 1957
- Jones, Daniel Everyman's Pronouncing Dictionary
Dent, London 1967
- King, N.L. Tree Planting in South Africa
Reprinted from the Journal of the South African Forestry Association, No. 21, October 1951
- Koolhoven, H. Teach Yourself Dutch
English Universities Press 1941/1956
- Lanham, L.W. and Traill, A. South African Pronunciation
English Studies in Africa, Vol. 5 No. 2
September 1962
- Lanham, L.W. and Traill, A. Pronounce English Correctly
Longmans, South Africa 1965
- Lanham, L.W. The Way We Speak
van Schaik, Pretoria 1967
- Lanham, L.W. The Pronunciation of South African English
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town 1967
- Lennox-Short, A. Trends in South Africa's English in Seven Studies in English
edit. Roberts, G., Purnell, Cape Town 1971
- Lewcock, Ronald Early Nineteenth Century Architecture in South Africa
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town 1963
- Lewis, M.B. Teach Yourself Malay
English Universities Press 1947, 1965 edit.
- Liversidge, R. See McLachlan, G.R.
- Mackie, W.S. Afrikanerisms, Standard Encyclopaedia of Southern Africa, Vol. I pp. 188-191
Nasou 1970

- McDavid, Raven I. Jr. edit.* (with Duckert, Audrey) Lexicography in English New York Academy of Sciences Vol. 211 June 8, 1973
- McLachlan, G.R. and Liversidge, R. Roberts' Birds of South Africa : Trustees, John Voelcker Bird Book Fund, Cape Town 1970
- Marckwardt, Albert American English Oxford University Press, 1958
- Martinet, André Elements of General Linguistics (English Translation) Faber, London 1960
- Mayat, Zuleika, edit. Indian Delights: A Book of Recipes by the Women's Cultural Group. Printer John Ramsay (Pty) Ltd., Durban 1961
- Meer, Fatima Portraits of Indian South Africans Avon House, Durban 1969
- Meester, J. and Setzer, H. W. The Mammals of Africa: an Identification Manual Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington, D.C. 1971
- Milner, Sir Alfred, later Viscount The Milner Papers 1897-1899 edit. C. Headlam Cassell, London 1931
- Nature Conservation, Department of Some Protected Wild Flowers of the Cape Province Published by the Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration 1967
- Nienaber, P.J. Suid-Afrikaanse Pleknaamwoordeboek Deel I S.A. Boeksentrum, Cape Town 1963
- O'Grady, John Aussie English 1965 Ure Smith, Sydney, Sixteenth Impression 1973
- Palmer, Eve and Pitman, Norah The Trees of South Africa A.A. Balkema, Cape Town 1961
- Partridge, A.C. English in South Africa, History of Standard Encyclopaedia of Southern Africa, Vol. IV, p.344. Nasou, Cape Town 1971
- Pettman, Reverend Charles Africanderisms: A Glossary of South African Colloquial Words and Phrases and of Place and Other Names. Longmans, Green & Co., London, 1913
- Pettman, Reverend Charles South African Place Names, Past and Present Daily Representative Limited, Queenstown 1931
- Picard, Brig. J.H. Roofies and Oumanne - Is Military English in South Africa being Gypped ? in English Usage in Southern Africa Vol. 6, No. 1 May 1975
- Ripman, Walter The Sounds of Spoken English J.M. Dent and Sons Ltd., London and Toronto 1923

* The names of authors of numerous papers in this collection are cited in the text, and in footnotes to it, with titles and page numbers. They do not appear in this list of references.

- Roberts, Austin The Birds of South Africa
Witherby, 1940 and Central News Agency,
London and Johannesburg, 1944
- Roget, Peter Mark Thesaurus of English Words and Phrases
1936 edit. Reprinted 1946
Longmans, Green & Co., London, 1946
- Rosenthal, Eric Encyclopædia of Southern Africa
4th edit. Frederick Warne, London, 1967
- Sabbagha, N.G. South Africa's Contribution to the English
Vocabulary
Taalfasette 8, 1969. van Schaik, Pretoria
- Sabbagha, N.G. English, South African Standard Encyclopaedia
of Southern Africa, Vol. IV, pp. 323-328
Nasou, Cape Town, 1971
- Sclater, W.L. The Fauna of South Africa
Vol. I The Mammals of South Africa, 1900
Vol. II The Mammals of South Africa, 1901
R.H. Porter, London, 1900, 1901
- Setzer, H.W. See Meester, J.
- Sisson, J.J.L. South African Judicial Dictionary
Butterworth, Durban, 1960
- Smith, C.A. Common Names of South African Plants
edit. Phillips, E. Percy and van Hoepen, Estelle
Government Printer, Pretoria, 1966
- Smith, J.L.B. Sea Fishes of Southern Africa 1949
Central News Agency Ltd., South Africa,
1950 edit.
- Smith, J.L.B. Sea Fishes of Southern Africa,
Central News Agency Ltd., South Africa,
1961 edit.
- Smuts, J. Die Byvoeglike Verbuiging in Afrikaans,
Taalfasette No.10, 1969 Van Schaik, Pretoria
- South African Orni- Check List of the Birds of South Africa
thological Society Cape Town, 1969
List Committee
- Stageberg, Norman The Sound System of English in
Anderson, Wallace L. and Stageberg, Norman C.
Introductory Readings on Language, 1962
Holt Rinehart and Winston, New York, 1966
(edit.)
- Swart, C.P. Africanderisms: A Supplement to the Rev.
Charles Pettman's Glossary of South African
Colloquial Words and Phrases and Other Names.
M.A. Thesis University of South Africa, Pretoria,
1934
- van Blerk, N. South Africanisms in the Oxford English
Dictionary
South African Library Quarterly Bulletin,
Vol. 16, No. 2, December, 1961
- Walker, Eric A History of South Africa
Longmans, Green & Co., London, 1928

- Walker, Eric See Cambridge History of the British Empire
Vol. VIII South Africa, Cambridge University
Press, 1936
- Wille, George Principles of South African Law, being a text
book of the Civil Law of the Union.
2nd edit. Juta, Cape Town and Johannesburg
1945
- Wille, George The Law of Mortgage and Pledge in South Africa
Juta, Cape Town and Johannesburg, 1961
- * Fitzsimons, V.F.M. Snakes of Southern Africa
Purnell, Cape Town 1962

ADDENDA TO SECTION II

OTHER REFERENCE WORKS

- Allen, Harold B Readings in Applied English Linguistics
(1958) Part VI Linguistics and the Dictionary
Second edit.
Appleton-Century-Crofts, New York 1964
- Arnauld, Antoine La Logique ou L'Art de Penser
The Art of Thinking trans. Dickoff, James
and James, Patricia.
Bobbs-Merrill United States of America 1964
- Arnold, I. V. The English Word (1966) Moskva
'Visshaya Shkola'
Moscow 1973
- Barnhart, Clarence L. Problems in Editing Commercial Dictionaries
No. 55 in Readings in Applied English
Linguistics.
See Allen, Harold B.
- Branford, William R.G. Dictionary of South African English on
Historical Principles Report No. 1 (1970)
Report No. 2 (1970)
English Institute, Rhodes University,
Grahamstown 1970
- Branford, William R.G. A Dictionary of South African English: as a
reflex of the English Speaking cultures of
South Africa: delivered at the National
Conference: English Speaking South Africa:
An Assessment July 1974
- Ebbitt, Wilma R. See Sledd, James
- Gleason, H.A. An Introduction to Descriptive Linguistics
(1955)
Holt Rinehart and Winston, New York 1961
- Johnson, Samuel A Plan for a Dictionary of the English Language;
addressed to the Right Honourable Philip
Dormer, Earl of Chesterfield, One of His
Majesty's Principal Secretaries of State.
Printed for J. and P. Knapton, T. Longman and
T. Shewell, C. Hitch, A. Millar, and R. Dodsley,
London MDCCXLVII
Scholar Press Facsimile 1970
- Marckwardt, Albert H. Dictionaries and the English Language in
Introductory Readings on Language (1962) edit.
Anderson, Wallace L. and Stageberg, Norman C.
Revised edit. Holt Rinehart and Winston,
United States of America 1966
- Murray, Sir James Introduction to A New English Dictionary Vol. I
Oxford Clarendon Press, Oxford 1888
- O'Connor, J. D. Phonetics (Pelican)
Penguin Books, Harmondsworth, Middlesex 1973
- Rao, G. Subba Indian Words in English
Oxford University Press, Oxford 1969
- Schane, Sanford A. Generative Phonology
Prentice Hall Inc. Inglewood Cliffs
New Jersey 1973
- Sledd, James and
Ebbitt, Wilma R. Dictionaries and THAT Dictionary: A Case-
book on the Aims of Lexicographers and the
Targets of Reviewers.
Scott, Foresman & Co., Chicago, Illinois, 1962

- Strang, Barbara M.H. Modern English Structure (1962)
Second edit.
Edward Arnold, London 1968
- Wittgenstein, Ludwig Philosophical Investigations
trans. G.E.M. Anscombe, Oxford 1953
(cit. Barbara M.H. Strang)
- Zgusta, Ladislav Manual of Lexicography
Academia: Publishing House of Czechoslovak
Academy of Sciences.
Mouton, The Hague, Paris 1971

Note: Authors of papers delivered at the International Conference on Lexicography in English held in June 1972, the proceedings of which are published as Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences Number 211 8th June 1973, edited by Raven I. McDavid and Audrey Duckert, include the following: Harold B. Allen, Edward Artin, Audrey Duckert, Edward Gates, Madeleine Mathiot, Virginia McDavid and Ladislav Zgusta.

Where their remarks are cited in Part I the titles of their papers are given in the footnotes with the reference Lexicography in English (see McDavid and Duckert), as the titles of both volume and paper would be very lengthy, and the title of the paper itself probably more useful at the relevant position in the text than given in detail here.

III NEWSPAPERS AND MAGAZINES: (Word Sources quoted)

- Argus, Cape The
Bona (African)
Cape Argus (Cape Town) now The Argus
Cape Herald (Cape Town)
Cape Times (Cape Town)
^x Darling
Daily Dispatch (East London)
Daily News (Durban)
Drum (black)
Eastern Province Herald (Port Elizabeth)
English Alive, 1968
Evening Post (Port Elizabeth) freq. Saturday edit. known
as Week end Post, cited throughout as Evening
Post.
Fair Lady
Farmer's Weekly
Fiat Lux (Indian)
^{*} Forum
Friend, The (Bloemfontein)
George Advertiser No. 278
14. 4. 1870 George Town, Cape of Good Hope
Grahamstown Journal 1831
1835 Vol. IV No. 192
Graphic, The (Indian)
Grocott's Mail (Grahamstown)
Het Suid Western (S. W. Cape)
Ilanga (African)
Lantern
Leader, The (Indian)
Muslim Digest
Panorama, South African
Personality
Pretoria News
Rand Daily Mail (Johannesburg)
Rhodeo (Student Paper, Rhodes University, Grahamstown)
Scope
Star, The (Johannesburg)
Standpunte
Suid Westelike Herald (S. W. Cape)
Sunday Times (Johannesburg)
Sunday Tribune (Natal)
The 1820
The World (Weekend World) (African)
^{*} Financial Mail
^x Crozier, The

IV WORD SOURCES:

- * Abrahams, Peter Mine Boy
Faber and Faber, London 1946, 1954 edit.
- * Abrahams, Peter Tell Freedom
Faber and Faber, London, 1954
- * Adams, Buck The Narrative of Private Buck Adams
7th (Princess Royal's) Dragoon Guards on the
Eastern Frontier of the Cape of Good Hope
1843-1848
MS. dated July 4th 1884
edit. Gordon-Brown, A. The Van Riebeeck
Society, V.R.S. Publication No. 22, Cape Town
1941
- * Adams, T.P. An Eulogy on Dr. Alexander Cowie and
Benjamin Green
L.H. Meurant, Grahamstown, 1830,
(1st publication to be printed in Grahamstown.)
- (* Agriculture and Forestry, Handbook for Farmers in South Africa
Department of edit. D.J. Seymore, Government Printer,
Pretoria, 1937
- * Alexander, James Edward Narrative of a Voyage of Observation Among
the Colonies of Western Africa in the Flag Ship
Thalia and of a Campaign in Kaffir-land on the
Staff of the Commander-in-Chief in 1835,
in two volumes. Henry Colburn Publisher,
London, 1837
- * Alexander, Sir James Edward MS. annotated sketchbook dated 1878
Collection A. Gordon-Brown.
- * Almanacs, Cape
- * African Court Calendars for 1807, 1809, 1815,
1819.
Printed and compiled by Geo. Ross, Cape Town.
- * African Court Calendar and Directory for 1822
Compiled by A. Richert Snr., Cape Town
- * African Court Calendar and Directory for 1826
Under sanction of Government. Government
Printing Office, Cape Town.
- * South African Almanac and Directory for 1827
Government Printing Office, Cape Town.
- * South African Directory Advertiser for 1831
South African Almanac and Directory for the
year 1831
By George Greig, Cape Town.
- * South African Directory and Advertiser for 1833
and South African Almanac and Directory for 183
By George Greig, Cape Town.
- * South African Directory and Advertiser for the
Year 1834 and The South African Directory and
Almanac for the year 1834
By George Greig, Cape Town
- * Cape of Good Hope Almanac and Annual Register
for 1841
B.J. van de Sandt, Cape Town.
- * Cape of Good Hope Almanac and Annual Register
for 1843
B.J. van de Sandt, Cape Town
- * Cape of Good Hope Almanac and Annual Register
for 1845
B.J. van de Sandt, Cape Town.

- * Cape of Good Hope Almanac and Annual Register for 1847
Compiled by B.J. van de Sandt, Late Superintendent of the Government Printing Office.
- * Cape of Good Hope Almanac and Annual Register for 1848
Compiled by B.J. van de Sandt.
- * Cape of Good Hope Almanac and Annual Register for 1853
Compiled by B.J. van de Sandt de Villiers.
- * Cape of Good Hope Almanac and Annual Register for 1856
B.J. van de Sandt de Villiers, Cape Town
- * Cape Town Directory, 1866
Chas. Goode, Cyrus J. Martin, Cape Town.
- Anderson, C.J. Notes of Travel in South Africa 1875 , 1969 edit.
Hurst and Blacket, London.
Reprint C. Struik, Cape Town, 1969
- Atmore, M.G. Cape Furniture
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1965
- Ayliff, The Rev. John see Whiteside, the Rev. Jos.
- Baraitser, M. and
Obholzer, A. Cape Country Furniture
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1971
- Barker, George Diary Transcript
1815-1828 Theopolis and Bethelsdorp
- * Barnard, Lady Anne,
also Barnard, Andrew Extracts from Lady Anne Barnard at the Cape
1797-1802
Dorothea Fairbridge, Oxford, 1924
- * Barnard, Lady Anne Journal in The Lives of the Lindsays
Vol. 3, John Murray, London, 1849
- * Barnard, Lady Anne Letters and Journals in South Africa a Century Ago
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1924
- * Beck, Hastings Meet the Cape Wines
Purnell and Sons, Cape Town, 1955
- Becker, Peter Sandy Tracks to the Kraals
Dagbreek, Johannesburg, 1956
- * Beeton, D. R. edit. Poetry 1974
University of South Africa English Studies,
Pretoria, 1974
- * Beeton, D. R. and
Dorner, Helen edit. English Usage in Southern Africa
Vols. 1 - 4, 1970-1973
See Section II
- (*) Belcher, C.I. edit. Norman's Law of Sale and Purchase in South Africa
3rd edit. Hortors, Johannesburg, 1961
- Bird, W. Wilberforce State of the Cape of Good Hope in 1822 by a Civil Servant in the Colony
John Murray, London, 1823
- Birkby, Carel Thirstland Treks
Faber and Faber, London, 1936

- Bisset, C. B. Sport and War in Africa
John Murray, London, 1875
- Black, Stephen The Dorp
2nd edit. Andrew Melrose, London, 1920
- Bosman, Herman
Charles A Cask of Jerepigo
no date.
Dassie editions.
- Bosman, Herman
Charles Mafeking Road
1947, 1969 edit.
Human and Rousseau, Cape Town, Pretoria, 1969
- Bosman, Herman
Charles Unto Dust
edit. Lionel Abrahams
Human and Rousseau, Cape Town, Pretoria, 1963
- * Bosman, Herman
Charles A Bekkersdal Marathon edit. Lionel Abrahams
Human and Rousseau, Cape Town, Pretoria, 1971
- * Bosman, Herman
Charles Jurie Steyn's Post Office edit. Lionel Abrahams
Human and Rousseau, Cape Town, Pretoria, 1971
- Botha, C. Graham Our South Africa : Past and Present
Cape Times, Cape Town for the United
Tobacco Company, 1938
- * Bower, Lola Zulu Boy
Hutchinson, London, 1960
- Bowker, T. H. A Journal 1834 - 1835
Cory Library MS. 1951
- Boyle, F. To the Cape for Diamonds
Chapman and Hall, London, 1873
- Braby Durban Directory, 1950
- (*) Bradlow, Edna and
Frank Here Comes the Alabama
A. A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1958
- Brett Young, Francis They Seek a Country
Heineman, London, 1937
- Brett Young, Francis City of Gold
The Book Club, London, 1940
- * Brink, André P. and
Hewitt, W. H. The Birds
an adaptation and translation of Die Hand vol Vere
André P. Brink, based on the Birds of
Aristophanes
Typescript lent by authors, 1973
- Brinkman, H. L. Breath of the Karroo
Herbert Jenkins, London, 1915
- Brookes, Edgar A History of Native Policy in South Africa
Nasionale Pers, Cape Town, 1924
- Broster, Joan A. Red Blanket Valley
Hugh Keartland, London, 1967
- Brown, George Gordon
and Brown, Alfred
Samler Brown's South Africa
Sampson Low, London, 1893

- * Bruce, M.C. The Golden Vessel
Juta, Cape Town and Johannesburg, 1919
- Brummer, E. de S. Problems and Tensions in South Africa
Political Science Quarterly, New York, 1955
- Buchanan, Barbara I. Pioneer Days in Natal
Shuter and Shooter, Pietermaritzburg, 1934
- Bulpin, T.V. Lost Trails of the Low Veld
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1951
- * Burchell, William Travels in the Interior of Southern Africa
Vol. I, 1822
Longman, Hurst, Rees, Orme,
Brown and Green, London, 1822
- Burchell, William Travels in the Interior of Southern Africa
Vol. II, 1824
Longman, Hurst, Rees, Orme
Brown and Green, London, 1824
- * Butler, Guy Take Root or Die
1966, published A.A. Balkema, Cape Town 1970
- * Butler, Guy Cape Charade
+ 1967, published A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1968
- * Campbell, Roy Collected Poems
Bodley Head, London, 1955-1957
- Cape Almanacs, see Almanacs.
- (*) Cape of Good Hope Literary Gazette
Vol. I, June 1830
W. Bridekirk, Heerengracht, Cape Town 1830
- Chase, John Centlivres The Cape of Good Hope and her Eastern Province
of Algoa Bay
1843 J.S. Christophers, London
Facsimile, C. Struik, Cape Town, 1967
- Clark, Percy M. The Autobiography of an Old Drifter
Harrap, London, 1936
- Cloete, Stuart Turning Wheels
Collins, London, 1937
- Cloete, Stuart Watch for the Dawn
Collins, London, 1939
- Cloete, Stuart The Hill of Doves
Houghton Mifflin, Boston, 1942
- Cloete, Stuart Rags of Glory
Collins, London, 1963
- Cloete, Stuart The Writing on the Wall and Other African
Stories
Collins, London, 1967
- * Clouts, Sydney One Life
New Coin Poetry
Purnell, Cape Town, 1966
- * Cohen, Louis Reminiscences of Kimberley
Bennett & Co., London, 1911
- + Callaway, Rev.
Canon, M.D. The Religious System of the Amazulu 1870
Publications of the Folk-Lore Society XV (1884)

- Collett, James MS. Accounts, Diary and Memoranda
Lent by 1820 Settler Museum, Grahamstown
- Collins, R. The Impassioned Wind
Jarrolds, London, 1958
- Cowin, Kay Bushveld, Bananas and Bounty
Michael Joseph, London, 1954
- Davenport, T.R.H. The Afrikaner Bond
Oxford University Press, Cape Town, 1966
- de Kiewiet, C.W. A History of South Africa Social and Economic
Oxford University Press, London, 1960
- de Kiewiet, C.W. Fears and Pressures in the Union of South Africa
1954, Virginia Quarterly Review, S.A.
Pamphlets 89, Cory Library
- (*) de Kock, Victor Those in Bondage
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1950
- de Kock, Victor The Fun They Had
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1955
- * Dhlomo, R. R. R. An African Tragedy
Lovedale Institution Press, 1928
- Dikobe, M. The Marabi Dance
Unpublished Typescript, 1970
- Dodd, A. D. edit. An Anthology of Short Stories by South African Writers
No date
- Dorner, Helen and Beeton, D. R. edit. See Beeton, D. R.
- * Duckitt, Hildagonda edit. M. Kuttel Book of Recipes
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1966
- * Duff Gordon, Lady Letters from the Cape 1861-1862
edit. Fairbridge, Dorothea
Juta, Cape Town, 1925
- * Dugmore, H. H. Reminiscences of an Albany Settler 1870
Grahamstown, 1871
- * Dugmore, Eliza Jane Diary 1871 (Covering a Journey to the Diamond Fields) Typed transcript lent by Professor Guy Butler
- du Plessis, I. D. The Cape Malays
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1944
- du Plessis, I. D. and Lückhoff, J. The Malay Quarter and its People
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1953
- du Val, Charles With a Show Through Southern Africa
2 Vols.
Tinsley Bros., London, 1882
- Edmondstone, F. J. Thorny Harvest
no date
Central News Agency South Africa Ltd.
- Emslie, Ethel Diary 1901
Pringle Collection MS.

- * Ewart, James, edit.
Gordon-Brown, A. James Ewart's Journal covering his stay at the Cape of Good Hope 1811-1814 and his part in the expedition to Florida and New Orleans edit. with an introduction by A. Gordon-Brown. C. Struik, Cape Town, 1970
- Fairbridge, Dorothea That Which Hath Been
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1913
- * Fairbridge, Dorothea Lady Anne Barnard at the Cape 1797-1802
Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1924
- Fairbridge, Dorothea
edit. See Duff Gordon, Lady
- Farini, G.A. Through the Kalahari Desert. A narrative of a journey with gun, camera and notebook to Lake Ngami and back.
Sampson, Low, Marston, Searle and Rimington, London, 1886
- Farmer's Annual and S.A. Farm Doctor
Farmer's Weekly, Bloemfontein, 1914
- * Fehr, William Treasures at the Castle of Good Hope
Board of Trustees, Castle Art Collection with Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1963
- (*) Fitzpatrick, Sir Percy Jock of the Bushveld
1907, 1909 edit. Longmans Green & Co. 1909
- Fitzroy, V.M. Dark Bright Land
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1955
- (*) Flemming, Leonard A Fool on the Veld
1918, 1944 edit.
A.C. White, Bloemfontein, 1944
- Forum
1968 Vol. 4, No. 1
1970 Vol. 6, 1 and 2
- (*) Fransen, H. and
Cook, M.A. The Old Houses of the Cape
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1965
- Fransen, H. The Stellenbosch Museum
Board of Trustees of the Stellenbosch Museum, 1967
- (*) Fugard, Athol The Blood Knot
Simondium Publishers, Johannesburg, 1963
- * Fugard, Athol People are Living There
Buren, Cape Town, 1969
Oxford University Press, London, Paperback edit. 1970
- * Fugard, Athol Boesman and Lena
Buren, Cape Town, 1969
- * Fugard, Athol Boesman and Lena (1969)
Oxford University Press, London
Three Crowns Paperback edit. 1973
- Fulton, Anthony The Dark Side of Mercy
Purnell, Cape Town, Johannesburg, 1968

- Fulton, Anthony I Swear to Apollo
Purnell and Son, Cape Town, 1970
- * Gerber, Hilda Cape Cookery Old and New
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1950
- (*) Gill, Eric A First Guide to South African Birds
5th edition, Maskew Miller, 1956
- Glanville, E. Tales from the Veld
Chatto and Windus, London, 1897
- Goldie, Fay River of Gold
Oxford University Press, 1969
- * Goldswain, Jeremiah The Chronicle of Jeremiah Goldswain
1819-1858, 2 volumes, edit. Una Long
van Riebeeck Society, Cape Town, 1946
(V.R.S. number 29)
- Goold-Adams, R.J.M. South Africa Today and Tomorrow
John Murray, London, 1936
- Gordon, Gerald Four People
McDonald, London, 1964
- * Gordon-Brown, A. South African Heritage from van Riebeeck to
Nineteenth Century Times
Human and Rousseau, Cape Town and Pretoria
1965
- Gordon-Brown edit. see Adams, Buck; Ewart, James; Traveller,
the
- * Gordon-Brown, A. Christopher Webb Smith, An Artist at the
Cape of Good Hope 1837-1839
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1965
- * Gordon-Brown, A. An Artist's Journey
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1972
- Gray, The Right Rev. A Journal of the Bishop's Visitation Tour
Robert D.D. through the Cape Colony
Part I, 1849; Part II 1851
Society for the Propagation of the Gospel,
London, 1849 and 1851
- * Green, Lawrence G. Where Men Still Dream
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1945
- * Green, Lawrence G. So Few are Free
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1946
- * Green, Lawrence G. Tavern of the Seas
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1947
- * Green, Lawrence G. In the Land of Afternoon
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1949
- * Green, Lawrence G. Grow Lovely, Growing Old
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1951
- * Green, Lawrence G. Lords of the Last Frontier
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1952
- * Green, Lawrence G. Under a Sky Like Flame
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1954
- Green, Lawrence G. Karoo
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1955

- * Green, Lawrence G. There's a Secret Hid Away
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1956
- * Green, Lawrence G. South African Beachcomber
Howard Timmins, Cape Town. 1958
- * Green, Lawrence G. These Wonders to Behold
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1959
- * Green, Lawrence G. Full Many a Glorious Morning
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1968
- Green, Lawrence G. A Giant in Hiding
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1970
- Green, Lawrence G. When the Journey's Over
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1972
- * Greene, L. Patrick The L. Patrick Greene Adventure Omnibus
John Hamilton Ltd., London, 1928
- * Greig, George The South African Almanac and Directory
for the year 1831
Geo. Greig, Cape Town, 1831
- * Greig, George The South African Almanac and Directory
for the year 1833
Geo. Greig, Cape Town, 1833
- * Grenfell Williams, Joy Moshesh, the Man on the Mountain
2nd edit. 1950, Paperback 1965
Oxford University Press, London, 1965
- Griffiths, Reginald Man of the River
Jarrols Ltd., London, 1968
- Grindley, J. R. Riches of the Sea
National Commercial Printers, Cape Town, 1969
- Haagner, A. and
Ivy, R.H. Sketches of South African Bird Life
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1923
- Haggard, H. Rider Nada the Lily
Longman, Green & Co., London, 1895
- * Hancock, James MS. Notebook 1820-1837
Photocopy lent by 1820 Settler Museum
- Handbook for Farmers in South Africa
see Agriculture
- Harris, W. Cornwallis Wild Sports of Southern Africa
John Murray, London, 1839
- Harvey, W.H. The Genera of South African Plants
J. C. Juta, Cape Town, 1868
(2nd edit. J. D. Hooker)
- Headlam, C. edit. see Milner, Sir Alfred
- * Heller, David In Search of V.O.C. Glass
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1951
- Hellmann, Ellen and
Abrahams, Leah edit. Handbook on Race Relations in South Africa
Oxford University Press, Cape Town, 1949

- Hemans, A.N. Log of a Native Commissioner
Books of Rhodesia, Bulawayo, 1935
- Henshilwood, Norah A Cape Childhood
David Philip, Cape Town, 1972
- Herrman, L. A Note on Cape English Idiom
English Studies in Africa, Vol. 2, No. 2,
September, 1959
- * Hewitt, A.G. Cape Cookery
Darter Bros. & Walton, Cape Town, 1890
- * Hewitt, A.H. and
Brink, André P. see Brink, André P.
- (*) Higham, Mary Household Cookery for South Africa
(1st edit. 1916)
8th edit. (reprint of 7th)
R.L. Esson, Johannesburg, 1939
- (*) Hockly, H.E. The Story of the British Settlers of 1820
Juta & Co. Ltd., Cape Town and Johannesburg
1948
- Hoernlé, R.F.S. South African Native Policy and the Liberal
Spirit.
Phelps-Stokes Fund of the University of Cape
Town, 1939
- Hoyle, Joan Some Flowers of the Bush
Longmans Green & Co., London, 1953
- * Huddleston, Trevor Nought for Your Comfort
Collins, London, 1956
- Hudson, M.B. South African Frontier Life
2 Vols. John Patterson, Port Elizabeth, 1852
- Hudson-Bennett, Lola See Bower, Lola
- I.C.I. Veterinary Products Handbook
I.C.I. (South Africa) Pharmaceuticals, no date.
- Jackson, Albert Trader on the Veld
A. A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1958
- Jacobson, Dan A Long Way from London
1953, 1958 edit.
Weidenfeld and Nicolson, London, 1958
- Jacobson, Dan A Dance in the Sun
Weidenfeld and Nicolson, London, 1956
- (*) Keet, B.B. Whither - South Africa ?
Trans. N. Marquard
University Publishers, Stellenbosch, 1956
- * Keith, Sir George M. A Voyage to South America and the Cape of
Good Hope
J.B.G. Vogel, London, 1819
- Keppel-Jones, Arthur A Short History of South Africa
Hutchinson's University Library, London, 1948

- * King, N.L. Tree Planting in South Africa
Reprinted from the Journal of the South African Forestry Association, No. 21, October, 1951
- * Kipling, Rudyard The Five Nations
Doubleday, Page & Co., New York, 1903
- (* Kipling, Rudyard The Definitive Edition of Rudyard Kipling's Verse 1940
Hodder and Stoughton, London, 1948 edit.
- Klein, Harry Stagecoach Dust
Pioneer Days in South Africa
Thos. Nelson & Sons, London, 1937
- Kolb, Peter
trans. Medley The Present State of the Cape of Good Hope, or a particular account of the several nations of the Hottentots ... together with a short account of the Dutch Settlement at the Cape. Done in English by Mr. Medley.
W. Innys, London, 1731
- Krauss, Ferdinand
edit. O.H. Spohr Travel Journal 1838-40
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1973
- * Krige, Uys The Dream and the Desert
Collins, London, 1953
- Kuttel, Mary edit. See Duckitt, Hildagonda
- Lady, A. Life at Natal a Hundred Years Ago 1864-1865
C. Struik, Cape Town, 1972
- * Lady, A. Life at the Cape (possibly by Louisa Grace Ross) 1870
C. Struik, Cape Town, 1963
- (* Laidler, P.W. A Tavern of the Ocean
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1926
- * Lanham, Peter and Mopeli-Paulus, A.S. Blanket Boy's Moon
Collins, London, 1953
- Larson, Kenneth The Talbots, Sweetnams and Wiggils
Unpublished typescript, Cory Library, 1943
- Latrobe, C.J. Journal of a Visit to South Africa in 1815 and 1816.
Seeley, London, 1818
- (* Leipoldt, C. Louis Three Hundred Years of Cape Wine
Stewart, Cape Town, 1951
- Le Vaillant, M. Travels into the Interior Part of Africa 1780-85, 2 Vols.
(trans. E. Helme) G.G.J. and J. Robinson, London, 1790
- (* Lewcock, Ronald Early Nineteenth Century Architecture in South Africa, 1795-1837
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town 1963
- Leyland, J. Adventures in the Far Interior of South Africa
George Routledge & Sons, Liverpool, 1866

- Lichtenstein, Heinrich
(trans. Anne Plumptre) Travels in Southern Africa, 1803-1806
Colburn, Henry, London, 1812
[V.R.S. No. 10, 1928, No. 11, 1930]
van Riebeeck Society, Cape Town, 1928, 1930
- * Long, Una edit. See Goldswain, Jeremiah
- Longmore, Laura The Dispossessed. A study of the sex-life of
Bantu women in urban areas in and around
Johannesburg.
Jonathan Cape, London, 1959
- Lucas, Thos. J. Camp Life and Sport in South Africa
Chapman and Hall, London, 1878
- Lückhoff, J. See du Plessis, I.D.
- McCarthy, James
Remington Fire in the Earth
Robert Hale, London, 1946
- MacDonald, W. The Romance of the Golden Rand
Cassel & Co., London, 1933
- Mackenzie, K. A Dragon to Kill
Eyre and Spottiswood, London, 1963
- Maclure, James The Caterpillar Cop 1972
Penguin, England 1974
- Mackrill, Joseph MS. Diary 1806-1816
Cory Library
- * MacLennan, D.A.C. Unpublished typescripts lent by the author of
* A Winter Vacation, 1961
* (In) The Dawn Wind, 1970. Also called
Great Wall of China
* The Wake, 1971
- McMagh, K. A Dinner of Herbs
Purnell, Cape Town and Johannesburg, 1968
- MacNab, R. Poets in South Africa
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1958
- * McKay, James Reminiscences of the Last Kaffir War
(late Sergeant in Her 1st Edit., Grahamstown, 1871
Majesty's 74th Highlanders) C. Struik, Cape Town, 1970
- * Malan, Robin Ah Big Yaws ?
David Philip, Cape Town, 1972
- (*) Marquard, Leo The Story of South Africa
Faber & Faber, London, Faber Paperback
1956
- Marquard, N. trans. See Keet, B. B.
- Masson, F. Botanical Travels
Royal Society, London, 1776
- Matshikiza, Todd Chocolates for my Wife
Hodder and Stoughton, London, 1961
- * Mayat, Zuleika edit. Indian Delights
Published by the Women's Cultural Group,
John Ramsay, Printer, Durban, 1961
- Medley trans. See Kolb, Peter

- (*) Meer, Fatima Portrait of Indian South Africans
Avon House, Durban, 1969
- Meiring, Jane Candle in the Wind
Frederick Muller, London, 1959
- Mentzel, O.F. Description of the Cape of Good Hope
translation 1944.
Van Riebeeck Society, Cape Town, 1944
(V.R.S. No. 25)
- (*) Metelerkamp, Sanni George Rex of Knysna
(pub. 1955) Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1955
- * Metrowich, F.C. Frontier Flames
Book of Africa (Gothic Press), Cape Town, 1968
- * Meurant, L.H. Sixty Years Ago
1855, Facsimile reprint
Africana Connoisseur's Press, Cape Town, 1963
- Millin, Sarah Gertrude Rhodes
Rhodes 1853-1902
Chatto & Windus, London, 1933
- * Mills, Gwen M. First Ladies of the Cape
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1952
- (*) Milner, Sir Alfred
later Viscount The Milner Papers 1897-1899
edit. C. Headlam
Cassel, London, 1931
- Mockford, Julian Here are South Africans
A.C. Black, London, 1944
- * 'Money Maker' Manuals for Investors No. 2
A new dictionary of mining terms.
London, No date.
- Mopeli-Paulus, A.S. See Lanham, Peter
- Morton, H.V. In Search of South Africa
Methuen & Co., London, 1948
- x [Mphahlele, Ezekiel Down Second Avenue
Faber and Faber, London, 1959]
- New South African Writing, Vols. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.
South African P.E.N. Centre,
published Purnell, no dates.
- Obholzer, A. and Baraitser, M. See Baraitser, M.
- O'Connor, J.K. The Afrikander Rebellion
Geo. Allen and Unwin, London,
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1915
- Opperman, J.D. edit. Spirit of the Vine
Published on the 50th Anniversary of the K.W.V.
Human and Rousseau, Cape Town and
Johannesburg, 1968
- Palmer, Eve and Pitman, Norah Trees of South Africa
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1961
- * Paton, Alan Cry, the Beloved Country
Jonathan Cape, London, 1948

- * Paton, Alan Too Late the Phalarope
Cannon, Cape Town for Jonathan Cape,
London, 1963
- Paton, Alan Kontakion for you Departed
Jonathan Cape, London, 1969
- * Percival, Captain Robert An Account of the Cape of Good Hope
of His Majesty's 18th or C. & R. Baldwin, London, 1804
Royal Irish Regiment
- (*) Pettman, The Rev. Africanderisms, A Glossary of South African
Charles Words and Phrases and of Place and other
Names.
Longmans Green and Co., London, 1913
- * Philip, Marie Caravan Caravel
Rex Collins, London, David Philip, Cape Town
1973
- * Philipps, Thomas Scenes and Occurrences in Albany and Caffer-
Land
William Marsh, London, 1827
- * Pigot, Eliza Sophia Journal 1819-1821
Typed transcript lent by Margaret Rainier,
since published A. A. Balkema, Cape Town
1974
- * Pohl, Victor The Dawn and After
Faber and Faber, London, 1964
- (*) Polson, Subaltern N. A Subaltern's Sick Leave, Calcutta 1837
Quoted in S. A. Library Quarterly Bulletin,
Vol. 10, No. 3, March 1956. D.H. Varley
- Prance, C.R. Tante Rebella's Saga
Witherby, London, 1937
- Pringle, Thomas Ephemerides
Smith, Elder & Co., London, 1828
- (*) Pringle, Thomas African Sketches
Edw. Moxon, London, 1834
- Pringle, Thomas MS. material made available by Professor
A.R.W. de Villiers, Rhodes University
- Rabone, A. edit. Record of a Pioneer Family, 1851-1890
C. Struik, Cape Town, 1966
- * Raymond, Harry B.I. Barnato, A Memoir
Isbister and Co., London, 1897
- Reed, Douglas Somewhere South of Suez
Jonathan Cape, London, 1950
- Reitz, Deneys Commando: A Boer Journal of the Boer War
Faber and Faber, London, 1929
- Reports of the Commissioners of Inquiry:
Inquiry on the Cape of Good Hope ordered by the
House of Commons to be published.
George Greig, Cape Town, 1827
- * Rivett-Carnac, Dorothy Hawk's Eye. A biography of Sir Henry Somerset
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1966

- (*) Roberts, A. The Birds of South Africa
Witherby, London
Central News Agency, Johannesburg, 1948
- Roberts, Brian The Churchills in Africa
Hamish Hamilton, London, 1970
- Roche, Harriet A. On Trek in the Transvaal, or Over Berg and Veld in South Africa
Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Remington, London, 1878
- Rogers, Mirabel The Black Sash
Rotonews (Pty) Ltd., Johannesburg, 1956
- Rooke, Daphne A Lover for Estelle
Victor Gollancz, London, 1961
- Rose, Cowper Four Years in Southern Africa
Henry Colburn and Richard Bentley, London, 1829
- Rosenthal, Eric General De Wet
Dassie Publications, 1946
- Ross, Louisa Grace See Lady, A. Life at the Cape
- * Rousseau, Leon Van Hunks and His Pipe
trans. Nancy Baines Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1966
- Schreiner, Olive Story of an African Farm, 1833
Chapman & Hall, London, 1890
Hutchinson edit. no date.
- Schreiner, Olive Thoughts on South Africa
T. Fisher Unwin Ltd., London, 1923
- * Schreiner, Olive Diamond Fields, a fragment
edit. Richard Rive in English in Africa
Vol. I, No. 1, March, 1974
- * Shaw, George Bernard Pygmalion, 1914 published 1916
1969 reprint, Penguin edition 1969
- (*) Shaw, The Rev. William Diaries 1820-1822, 1826-1829
Typed transcript lent by Professor David Hammond Tooke, since published A. A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1972
- Shaw, The Rev. William The Story of My Mission in South-Eastern Africa
Hamilton, Adams & Co., London, 1860
- (*) Shone, Thomas Diaries 1838-1867
Typed transcript and MS.
Cory Library
- Sisson, J.J.L. The South African Judicial Dictionary
Butterworth & Co. (Africa) Ltd., Durban, 1960
- Slater, F.C. edit. Centenary Book of South African Verse (1925 re-issued 1946)
Longmans, London, 1946

- Smith, Andrew The Diary of Dr. Andrew Smith, 1835
edit. Percival R. Kirby
Vol. I V.R.S. 20, 1939
Vol. II V.R.S. 21, 1940
Van Riebeeck Society, Cape Town, 1939, 1940
- (*) Smith, C.A. Common Names of South African Plants
edit. Phillips, E. Percy and van Hoepen, Estelle
Department of Agricultural and Technical
Services, Government Printer, Pretoria, 1966
- (*) Smith, J.L.B. The Sea Fishes of Southern Africa
1950 and 1961 edit.
Central News Agency Ltd., South Africa
- * Smith, Pauline The Little Karoo, 1925
1936 edit. Jonathan Cape, London, 1936
- * Smith, Pauline The Beadle, 1926
1929 edit. Jonathan Cape, London, 1929
- Smith, Pauline Platkops Children
Jonathan Cape, London, 1935
- (*) South African Library Quarterly Bulletin
Vol. 10, No. 3. March, 1956
- South African Institute of Race Relations S.A.I.R.R. Report 1948-49
S.A.I.R.R. Survey, see also Race Relations
1969 S.A.I.R.R.
- Sparrman, Anders A Voyage to the Cape of Good Hope
2 Vols. 1785 (translation G. Forster)
2nd edit. G.G.J. and J. Robinson, London 1786
- Spottiswoode, Hilda, edit. South Africa - The Road Ahead
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1960
- Stander, Siegfried The Horse
Victor Gollancz Ltd., London, 1968
- Statute Law of the Cape of Good Hope
Saul Solomon, Cape Town, 1862
- * Stormberg, R. Y. Mrs. Pieter de Bruyn
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1920
- Stratham, F. Reginald Blacks, Boers and British
McMillan & Co., London, 1881
- * Stubbs, Thomas Reminiscences 1820 - 1877
M.A. thesis Rhodes University, edited by
Robert T. McGeoch, 1965
- Swart, C.P. Africanderisms: A Supplement to the Rev. Charles
Pettman's Glossary of South African Colloquial
Words and Phrases and Other Names.
M.A. thesis University of South Africa, Pretoria,
1934
- Tait, Barbara
Campbell The Durban Story
Knox Printing Co., Durban, 1961
- Telford, A.A. Yesterday's Dress: A History of Costume in
South Africa
Purnell, Cape Town, Johannesburg, London,
1972

- * Thompson, George Travels and Adventures in Southern Africa by
George Thompson, Esq.
Eight years a resident at the Cape, comprising a
view of the present state of the Cape Colony with
observations on the progress and prospects of
the British Emigrants.
2 Vols. Henry Colburn, London, 1827
- Thompson, Kate Richard's Way
George Harrap and Co., London, 1965
- Thunberg, Charles
Peter, M.D. Travels in Europe, Africa and Asia Made
Between the Years 1770 and 1779
(translation published 1795)
2 Vols. F. & C. Rivington, London, 1795
- Tomlinson Commission Summary of the Report of the Commission for
the Socio-Economic Development of the Bantu
Areas within the Union of South Africa
Government Printer, Pretoria, 1955
- * Traveller, The
edit. A. Gordon-Brown Journal in An Artist's Journey
Thought to be made by Lieut. Frederick Knyvett
between 1832-33 at which time he was at the
Cape from India.
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1972
- van Alphen, J.G. Jan Venter, S.A.P.
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1929
- * Vaughan, Iris The Diary of Iris Vaughan, circa 1902
Central News Agency, South Africa, 1958
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1969
- * Vaughan, Iris Last of the Sunlit Years
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1969
- Walker, Eric Lord de Villiers and his Times
Constable, London, 1925
- (*) Walker, Eric A History of South Africa
Longmans Green and Co., London, 1928
- (*) Walker, Eric, edit. Cambridge History of the British Empire
Vol. VIII South Africa
Cambridge University Press, 1936
- Walker, Oliver Kaffirs are Lively
Victor Gollancz Ltd., London, 1948
- Walker, Oliver Wanton City
Werner Laurie, London, 1949
- Wallace, R. Farming Industries of the Cape Colony
P.S. King & Son, London, 1896
- Ward, Rowland The Sportsman's Handbook
Published by the Author
Simpkin, Marshall, Hamilton & Co. Ltd.,
London, 1891
- * Webster, W.H.B. Narrative of a Voyage to the Southern Atlantic
Ocean in the Years 1828, 29, 30 Performed in
H.M. Sloop Chanticleer
From the private journal of W.H.B. Webster -
surgeon of the sloop, In two volumes
Richard Bentley, Publisher in Ordinary to His
Majesty, London, 1834
(Vol. I, pp. 215-335.)

- Weiner, M. Novel, Title mislaid.
Published Mills and Boon, London, 1969
(quot. at moes)
- + White, John Manchip The Land God Made in Anger
George Allen and Unwin, Ltd., London, 1969
- Whiteside, The Rev. Jos. and Ayliff, the Rev. John History of the Abambo, generally known as Fingos.
Printed at the "Gazette", Butterworth, Fingoland, 1912
Facsimile C. Struik, Cape Town, 1962
- Whiting Spilhaus, M. Under a Bright Sky
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1959
- Whiting Spilhaus, M. Doorstep Baby
Juta & Co. Ltd., Cape Town, Wynberg, Johannesburg, 1969
- Whitney, Phyllis A. Blue Fire
David Bruce and Watson, London, 1973
- (*) Wille, George Principles of South African Law
2nd edit. Juta, Cape Town and Johannesburg, 1945
- + Westwood, Gwen Bright Wilderness
Mills and Boon, London 1970

V. OTHER SOURCES

- (1) Oral informants
- (2) Private letters
- (3) Radio programmes and bulletins
- (4) Songs by Pip Freedman
Des Lindberg and
A.E. Voss
- (5) Philip's School Atlas
- (6) B.P. and Shell Road Maps of South Africa
and Place Name Lists
- (7) Advertising or Information leaflets
- (8) National Geographic Magazine, December, 1971
- (9) Matriculation Handbook, 1973
- (10) Lennon's Dutch Medicines Handbook
- (11) Telephone Directories and Postal Code
- (12) Press Digest, 1948
- (13) Charton, Nancy: Afrikaners, Political Ring-
masters. Typescript lent by author. Paper
delivered at The Afrikaner Today, Abe Bailey
Centre for Intergroup Studies, March, 1974
- (14) Hansard
- (15) Goldsmith-Carter, George: Sailing Ships and
Sailing Craft. Paul Hamlyn, London 1969

(16)

Piscator Autumn 1974
see Jackson P.B.N.

HONG KONG

- * Han, Suyin Destination Chungking
Paperback edition, 1973
- * Han, Suyin A Many Splendoured Thing
Jonathan Cape, London, 1952
- * Cavell, James Tai Pan
Michael Joseph, London, 1966
Sphere Books paperback edition, 1967
- * Gordon Davies, John Text for Hong Kong through the Looking Glass
Kelly and Walsh, Hong Kong, 1969, 3rd edit.
1972
- * South China Morning Post, Victoria, H.K.

AUSTRALIA

- * O'Grady, John Aussie English (see Section II)
- * Lawson, Henry While the Billy Boils
Angus and Robertson, Sydney, 1896
Pacific Books, 1969
- * Dennis, C.J. Digger Smith
First published 1918
Angus and Robertson, Sydney, 1920
- * Dennis, C.J.
edit. Alec H. Chisholm Selected Verse
First published 1950
Angus and Robertson, Sydney, 1971
- * Dennis, C.J. The Songs of a Sentimental Bloke (1915)
Seventeenth Impression, Angus and Robertson,
Sydney, 1919
- * Lauder, Afferbeck Let Stalk Strine: a lexicon of modern Strine
usage, compiled and annotated by Afferbeck
Lauder.
Ure Smith, Sydney, 1965
- * Rose, Ronald Ngari the Hunter
Collins, London, Sydney, 1968

CANADA

- * Montgomery, L.M. Anne of Green Gables etc.

ANGLO-INDIA

- * The Indian Cookery Book by a Thirty Five
Year's Resident
Thacker and Spink, Calcutta (reprint) 1911
- * Forster, E.M. A Passage to India (1924)
Edward Arnold, London. Pocket edit. 1947
- * Forster, E.M. The Hill of Devi : being Letters from Dewas
State Senior,
Edward Arnold, London, 1953
- (*) Masters, John Bhowani Junction
Michael Joseph, London, 1954
- * Rao, G. Subba See Addenda Section II

